К. А. Гузеева
С. И. Костыгина

грамматика английского языка

герундий

учебное пособие

English Grammar

The Gerund

On every hand, in every land,
It's thoroughly agreed –
The English language to explain
Is very hard, indeed.

Harry Hemsley

Learning is ever young, even
in old age.

Author Unidentified

K. A. Gouzeeva, S. I. Kostygina

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

THE GERUND

ST.-PETERSBURG
2004

К. А. Гузеева, С. И. Костыгина

ГРАММАТИКА АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА

ГЕРУНДИЙ

Учебное пособие

Издательство «СОЮЗ»
Санкт-Петербург
2004

ББК 81.2 Англ.
Г 93

Рецензент: кандидат филологических наук, доцент
О. А. Березина

Гузеева К. А., Костыгина С. И.
Г 93 Грамматика английского языка. Герундий. — СПб.: Издательство «Союз», 2004. — 336 с. — (Изучаем иностранные языки).

ISBN 5-94033-170-X

Учебное пособие предназначено для студентов факультетов иностранных языков и широкого круга изучающих английский язык. Цель данного пособия состоит в том, чтобы дать максимально полное описание форм, значений и функций герундия, показать на многочисленных примерах его особенности и сформировать автоматические навыки его употребления.

ББК 81.2 Англ.

© Гузеева К. А.,
Костыгина С. И., 2004
© Издательство «Союз», 2004
© Панкевич А.
оформление обложки, 2004

ISBN 5—94033—170—X

От авторов

Неличные формы глагола вообще и герундий в частности, представляют большую трудность для изучающих английский язык. Это происходит вследствие значительного расхождения между глагольными системами русского и английского языков в целом, а в случае с герундием – в результате отсутствия аналогичной глагольной формы в русском языке.

Цель данного пособия состоит в том, чтобы дать максимально полное описание форм, значений и функций герундия, показать на многочисленных примерах особенности этой неличной формы глагола и сформировать автоматические навыки ее употребления.

Для облегчения понимания материала бо́льшая часть примеров сопровождается их переводом на русский язык. Иллюстративный материал почерпнут, главным образом, из оригинальной литературы.

Пособие состоит из двух частей:

описательной

и

практической.

Каждый раздел описательной части сопровождается многочисленными упражнениями различной направленности – упражнениями на понимание, активизацию и развитие речевых навыков. Большое количество упражнений обусловлено необходимостью обеспечить прочное усвоение описываемых грамматических явлений, а также выработать речевые навыки и умения у тех, кто будет изучать герундий по этому пособию.

Упражнения во всех разделах располагаются в порядке постепенного нарастания трудностей – от узнавания и понимания грамматического явления до условно-речевой и речевой стадии и перевода с русского языка на английский как конечного этапа. В речевых упражнениях делается попытка воссоздать коммуникативные ситуации, характерные для употребления той или иной

модели. По усмотрению преподавателя порядок следования упражнений может быть изменен.

Лексическое наполнение упражнений максимально упрощено для более четкого выявления и понимания изучаемого грамматического материала.

Для удобства пользования пособием каждая тема/подтема пронумерована и вынесена в общий заголовок страницы *(колонтитул)*, а соответствующие ей упражнения даны под общим номером темы/подтемы.

В качестве иллюстративного материала в пособие введены дополнительные тексты. Это оригинальные тексты двух типов:

1. различные высказывания *(афоризмы, цитаты, пословицы и поговорки)* под общей рубрикой ***People Say***, приведенные в рамке. Они содержат герундий в форме или функции, обсуждаемой в данном разделе.
2. тексты юмористического характера *(шутки, анекдоты, шуточные и детские стихи)* под общей рубрикой ***Keep Smiling***, приведенные в рамке. Они, как правило, замыкают тот или иной раздел описания герундия и так же, как и тексты первого типа, демонстрируют употребление герундия в естественном контексте в речи.

В пособии имеется обобщающий раздел упражнений (**Revision**). Он включает в себя как обобщающие упражнения на узнавание, определение и перевод грамматических трудностей, связанных с употреблением герундия, так и дополнительные упражнения по отдельным темам. В обобщающих упражнениях использованы различные оригинальные тексты – высказывания, анекдоты, короткие рассказы, сказки, шуточные стихи, что позволяет студенту лучше усвоить употребление герундия в естественном контексте.

В **Приложении** (**Appendix**) приводятся:

1. перечень наиболее употребительных в речи моделей, содержащих герундий (**Everyday Gerund**),

2. перевод приведенных в пособии пословиц и поговорок,

3. сводные таблицы, которые дают возможность обобщить и систематизировать сложный грамматический материал по теме *"Синтаксические функции герундия"*.

CONTENTS

От авторов 5
INTRODUCTION. Verbals 9
The double nature of verbals 10
The verbal characteristics of the non-finite verb forms 10
The nominal characteristics of the non-finite verb forms 15
THE GERUND 17
I. The double nature of the gerund 17
The syntactical features of the gerund 20
The morphological categories of the gerund (the forms of the gerund) 20
Exercises 30
II. The use of the gerund 46
The gerundial construction 46
Exercises 53
III. The syntactical functions of the gerund 57
1. the gerund as subject 58
Exercises 64
2. the gerund as predicative 79
Exercises 81
3. the gerund as part of a compound verbal predicate 84
Exercises 89
4. the gerund as object 93
a) the direct object 93
Exercises 105
b) the prepositional object 120
Exercises 132
5. the gerund as attribute 146
Exercises 154
6. the gerund as adverbial (adverbial modifier) 167
a) the adverbial modifier of manner 167
Exercises 172
b) the adverbial modifier of time 179
Exercises 183

c) the adverbial modifier of reason 192
Exercises 195
d) the adverbial modifier
of attendant circumstances 201
Exercises 205
e) the adverbial modifier of concession 211
Exercises 212
f) the adverbial modifier of condition 218
Exercises 220
g) the adverbial modifier of purpose 229
Exercises 231
h) the same preposition – different
adverbial modifiers 237
Exercises 239
IV. Without + Gerund or Not + Participle I? 246
Exercises 248
V. The gerund and the verbal noun 252
Exercises 255
VI. The ways of translating the gerund into Russian 257
VII. Different syntactical functions of the gerund
Exercises 259
VIII. Different syntactical functions of the gerundial
construction. *Exercises* 278
IX. Revision. *Exercises* 285
X. Appendix 307
1. Everyday Gerund 307
2. The Quoted English Sayings and Proverbs
and Their Russian Equivalents 318
3. *Table I.*
The Gerund as Adverbial Modifier
with Different Prepositions 320
Table II.
The Gerund as Adverbial Modifier of Different
Types with the Same Preposition 322
Table III.
Different Syntactical Functions of the Gerund
Used with the Same Preposition 323
Table IV.
The Syntactical Functions of the Gerund 326

INTRODUCTION

VERBALS
(NON-FINITE VERB FORMS)

The verb has finite and non-finite forms. Non-finite forms are also called verbals. There are **four verbals** in English: **the infinitive**, **the gerund**, **the participle (participle I** and **participle II)**. They differ from finite forms in that they lack some grammatical categories that finite verbs have: they have no category of person, number, tense, and mood, thus they cannot be used alone as the predicate of the sentence. They can be used only as part of the predicate – either as part of an analytical form in a simple predicate (is *doing*, has *been doing*, is *done*), or part of a compound predicate (has *to do*, can *do*, stop *doing*, seems *to do*). But in each case it is the verbal that names the action or state expressed by the predicate, that is it forms the notional part of the predicate.

I can't **understand** you.

understand is an infinitive, it is part of a compound verbal modal predicate.

He seemed **to see** nothing.

to see is an infinitive, it is part of a compound verbal predicate of double orientation.

She began **reading** the letter.

reading is a gerund, it is part of a compound verbal phasal predicate.

Are you **waiting** for someone?

waiting is participle I, it is part of the present continuous form and thus part of a simple verbal predicate.

I've **made** a shopping list.

made is participle II, it is part of the present perfect form and so part of a simple verbal predicate.

THE DOUBLE NATURE OF THE VERBALS

The **verbals** have much in common:

They all combine the characteristics of the verb with those of some nominal part of speech (either the noun or the adjective or the adverb). That's why grammarians usually speak of their double nature.

THE VERBAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE NON-FINITE VERB FORMS

I. Similar to the verb the verbals possess **the morphological categories of voice** (with transitive verbs), **perfect** and **aspect**, thus

to face	is an active, non-perfect common *(non-continuous)* infinitive.
to have been facing	is an active perfect continuous infinitive.
to have been faced	is a passive perfect common infinitive.
facing	is an active non-perfect gerund (or ~ participle I).
having been faced	is a passive perfect gerund (or ~ participle I).

II. All the verbals have **the combinability of the verb**, that is, they may combine with nouns, pronouns and adverbs in the same way as finite verbs:

I want to see *the* new *film tonight*.

Сегодня вечером я хочу посмотреть новый фильм.

(*the film* is a noun used as a direct object to the infinitive "to see," *tonight* is an adverb used as an adverbial modifier of time to the infinitive "to see")

I insist on meeting your *friend*.

Я настаиваю на том, чтобы встретить твоего друга.

(*friend* is a noun used as a direct object to the gerund "meeting")

We intend to give *him* a warm *welcome*.

Мы намерены оказать ему теплый прием.

(*him* is a pronoun used as an indirect object to the infinitive "to give," likewise *welcome* is a noun used as a direct object to the same infinitive)

The tourists kept complaining *about* poor *service*.

Туристы постоянно жаловались на плохое обслуживание.

(*about service* is a prepositional noun phrase used as a prepositional object to the gerund "complaining")

While talking *about the trip*, we discussed all the problems.

Разговаривая о поездке, мы обсудили все проблемы.

(*about the trip* is a prepositional noun phrase used as a prepositional object to the participle "talking")

As it is seen from the above examples, a non-finite verb form may take direct, indirect or prepositional objects or be modified by an adverbial modifier in the same way as a finite verb.

NOTE:

Verbals are seldom used alone, without some accompanying words, such as nouns that form different kinds of objects to the verbals, or adverbs forming adverbial modifiers to them. Together with these nouns, adverbs, prepositions and conjunctions verbals make *phrases*. In the English grammatical tradition (unlike the Russian one) in the syntactical analysis these phrases form one indivisible whole and are to be treated as one part of the sentence.

Sometimes the elements dependent on the non-finite verb form may be numerous (they may even include a clause), but nevertheless *they form one whole* which performs *one function in the sentence*.

Elizabeth was too young **to remember that scandal**.

Елизавета была слишком молода, чтобы помнить об этом скандале.

to remember that scandal makes a whole which functions as an adverbial modifier of consequence.

To be treated nastily for no reason at all seemed strange to him.

То, что с ним обращались так отвратительно без всякой на то причины, казалось ему странным.

To be treated nastily for no reason at all is an infinitive phrase used as the subject of the sentence.

He didn't have the brains **to see that it was not even in his own interest**.

Ему не хватало ума понять, что это было даже не в его интересах.

to see that it was not even in his own interest is an infinitive phrase used as an adverbial modifier of purpose.

Having promised Philip that he would be firm Tom could not plead for mercy.

Так как Том обещал Филиппу быть стойким, он не мог просить о пощаде.

Having promised Philip that he would be firm is a participial phrase used as an adverbial modifier or reason.

The idea **of going to him** scared me.

Мысль о том, что надо идти к нему, пугала меня.

of going to him is a gerundial phrase used as an attribute.

That meant **letting them into the secret**.

Это означало, что их посвятят в эту тайну.

letting them into the secret is a gerundial phrase used as a predicative.

Only in case a verbal forms part of the predicate it makes one whole with the predicate and all the other words in the sentence function as different parts of this sentence: as objects and adverbial modifiers.

I can **see** this new film tonight.

see is an infinitive used as part of a compound verbal modal predicate, so the direct object "film" and the adverbial modifier of time "tonight" modify the whole predicate and not only the infinitive part of it.

III. **The non-perfect forms** of the verbals denote actions simultaneous with or posterior to those of the finite verb forms (that is simultaneous with or posterior to the present, past or future actions) while **the perfect forms** of the verbals denote actions prior to those of the finite verb forms (that is prior to the present, past or future actions).

I'm glad **to see** you. = I see you and I'm glad.

I expect him **to come** here. = I expect that he will come here.

I'm glad **to have seen** the play. = I saw (have seen) the play and now I'm glad. (I'm glad that I have seen the play.)

She reproached herself for **having done** it. = She reproached herself that she had done it.

Being a student of the University I attend a lot of lectures. = As I'm a student of the University, I attend a lot of lectures.

Having read the book my friend advised me to read it. = When my friend had read the book, he advised me to read it.

IV. All verbals can form **predicative constructions**, that is syntactical units consisting of a noun or pronoun and a non-finite verb form, where **the verbal element is in predicate relation to the nominal element**, namely, in a relation similar to that between the subject and the predicate of the sentence. In constructions the verbal denotes an action performed by or to the person or non-person expressed by the nominal element. Such predicative constructions form syntactical units functioning as one part of the sentence. They usually correspond to Russian subordinate clauses.

Can you hear **someone playing the piano**? – an objective participial construction used as a complex object.

Вы слышите, как кто-то играет на рояле?

I heard **a car turn round the corner**. – an objective with the infinitive construction used as a complex object.

Я услышал, как за угол завернула машина.

It's difficult **for untrained people to find work.** – a for-to-infinitive construction used as the subject.
Людям без профессии трудно найти работу.

I'll have **you punished.** – an objective participial construction used as a complex object.
Я добьюсь, чтобы вас наказали.

The difference between a verbal construction and a verbal phrase lies in the fact that the latter (the verbal phrase) has no nominal element denoting the doer of its action, but it denotes an action related to the subject of the sentence or some other part of the sentence.

Compare:

a verbal phrase

The subject

She couldn't bear **to see the pain in his eyes.**
Видеть боль в его глазах было выше её сил.

a verbal construction

The nominal element

She couldn't bear ***him* to cry.**
Она не могла вынести его слезы.

THE NOMINAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE NON-FINITE VERB FORMS

The non-verbal (nominal) character of the verbals reveals itself in their syntactical functions:

The participle (both I and II) like an adjective may be used as *an attribute* – a **smiling** girl, a **flying** object, a **ruined** project or as *an adverbial* like an adverb.

I fell asleep **listening to the radio**.

Я заснул, слушая радио.

The infinitive and the gerund may be used in the same syntactical functions as the noun: as *subject*, *predicative* or *object*.

the subject *a predicative*

To decide is **to act**.

Принимать решение значит действовать.

Learning a foreign language is a pleasure.

Учить иностранный язык – удовольствие.

an object

He does not like **to bother people about such trifles**.

Ему не нравится беспокоить людей по таким пустякам.

I enjoy **reading English books in the original**.

Я с удовольствием читаю английские книги в оригинале.

THE GERUND

THE DOUBLE NATURE OF THE GERUND

Doing is better than ***saying***.*

English proverb

Life is like ***riding*** **a bicycle**. You don't fall off unless you plan to stop ***pedalling***.

Claude Pepper

Act so that every one of your actions is capable ***of being made*** **into a universal truth**.

I. Kant

By *doing* nothing we learn to do ill.*

English proverb

Diplomacy is the art
of *restraining* power.

H. Kissinger

The gerund is a non-finite verb form which names a process or an action. It is formed by adding the suffix **-ing** to the stem of the verb and thus coincides in form with participle I.

---

*See the Russian equivalents of English sayings in Appendix, p. 318.

Like other non-finite verb-forms the gerund has a double nature, that is, it has ***verbal*** and ***nominal*** properties, it combines the features of the verb with those of the noun.

The nominal character of the gerund manifests itself in 1) its syntactical functions and 2) partly in its combinability.

I. In the sentence the gerund can function in the same way as the noun, so it may function as

the subject

Living together as man and wife seemed the most natural thing.
Совместная жизнь в супружестве казалась самой естественной.

a predicative

That is *letting them into the secret*.
Это значит выдать им секрет.

an object

Imagine *his having only just realised the cinema*.
Представь себе, что он только сейчас понял, что такое кино.

II. a) Like a noun the gerund may combine with a preposition when used in the function of 1) an attribute or 2) an adverbial modifier or 3) a prepositional object.

1. The idea ***of*** *going to him* scared me. (attribute)
   Сама мысль о том, чтобы пойти к нему, меня пугала.

2. You'd have shown your concern better ***by*** *sending for us before*. (adverbial modifier)
   Вы бы проявили больше беспокойства, послав за нами раньше.

And you went out ***without*** *telling me anything.* (adverbial modifier)
И ты вышел, ничего мне не сказав (и ничего мне не сказал).

He turned a page in his album and stared for several seconds in disbelief ***before*** *speaking to Tom*. (adverbial modifier)
Он перевернул страницу в альбоме и несколько секунд неподвижно смотрел недоумевая, прежде чем заговорил с Томом.

3. Were you thinking ***of*** *turning her out*? (prepositional object)
Вы думали о том, чтобы выгнать ее?

II. b) Like a noun the gerund can combine with 1) a noun in the genitive case or 2) a possessive pronoun when they denote the doer of the action expressed by the gerund.

1. ***John's*** *seeing him like that* was enough revenge for him.
То, что Джон увидел его в таком виде, было для него достаточным отмщением.

2. He had a sudden vision of ***her*** *standing in the kitchen*.
Он внезапно представил себе, что она стоит в кухне.

II. c) Like a noun it may combine with the negative pronoun *no*.

There is ***no*** *talking George into anything new*, he is so conservative.
Джорджа не уговоришь на что-нибудь новенькое, он такой консерватор.

The verbal character of the gerund manifests itself in 1) its syntactical and 2) its morphological features.

THE SYNTACTICAL FEATURES OF THE GERUND

a) like a finite verb the gerund may be modified by an adverbial modifier.

> There can be no object *in your staying* ***in Paris now***. (Where? *in Paris* When? ***now***)
> Нет смысла тебе сейчас оставаться в Париже.

b) like a finite verb the gerund of a transitive verb can take a direct object.

> Don did a period of reform school *for pinching* ***cigarettes***. (What? ***cigarettes***)
> Дон отсидел срок в исправительной колонии за то, что воровал сигареты.

THE MORPHOLOGICAL CATEGORIES OF THE GERUND (THE FORMS OF THE GERUND)

They also manifest the verbal character of the gerund. They are 1) *the category of voice* for transitive verbs and 2) *the category of perfect*. Thus there are *four* forms of the gerund for transitive verbs and *two* forms for intransitive verbs.

The gerund	Active	Passive
Non-perfect	seeing going	being seen —
Perfect	having seen having gone	having been seen —

I. The category of voice of the gerund has the same meaning as in the corresponding finite verb forms. It shows the direction of the action from the subject or to the subject.

Compare:

The Active Gerund	**The Passive Gerund**
I avoid *seeing* him.	I avoid *being seen* by him.
Я избегаю встреч с ним (стараюсь не встречаться с ним).	Я стараюсь, чтобы он меня не видел.
I enjoy *reading* an English book before going to sleep.	Children enjoy *being read to* before going to sleep.
Я люблю почитать английскую книжку перед сном.	Дети любят, когда им читают перед сном.

I've heard of the water mill ***being used*** to work the bellows in the forge and of you ***working*** there with Tom.
Я слышал, что водяную мельницу используют для того, чтобы приводить в движение меха в кузнице, и что ты работаешь там с Томом.

He is already scared of ***being charged*** with serving minors and of ***having*** a policeman in his pub.
Он и так уже напуган тем, что ему предъявляют обвинение в том, что он отпускает спиртное несовершеннолетним, и тем, что у него в баре теперь полицейский.

PEOPLE SAY

I don't like ***getting*** **advantage at the expense of somebody else**.

Author Unidentified

❖ ❖ ❖

I wish we all discovered the joy **of *forgiving*** and ***being forgiven***.

Author Unidentified

After the adjective ***worth*** (сто́яший) and after some verbs the *active* gerund is used in its passive meaning. These are the verbs: ***to want, to need, to require*** in the meaning of *нуждаться, требоваться*, ***to deserve*** in the meaning of *заслуживать*, ***to bear*** (always negative) in the meaning of *не выдерживать, не выносить*.

The book is ***worth*** *reading*.	Книгу стоит прочесть.
The house ***wants*** *reconstructing*.	Дом нужно перестраивать.
My skirt ***needs*** *lengthening*. (= My skirt ***needs*** *to be lengthened*.[1])	Мою юбку надо удлинить.
The windows ***need*** *cleaning*. (= The windows ***need*** *to be cleaned.)*	Окна надо помыть.
The floor ***requires*** *washing*.	Пол надо (требуется) помыть.
The boy ***deserves*** *punishing*. (= The boy ***deserves*** *to be punished*.[1])	Мальчик заслуживает наказания.
His behaviour ***deserves*** *punishing*.	Его поведение заслуживает наказания.
His opinions ***won't bear*** *repeating* in public.	Его взгляды невозможно обнародовать. (...не выдержат повторения на публике.)

PEOPLE SAY

If a thing is *worth* ***doing*** it is *worth* ***doing*** **well**.

Author Unidentified

[1]It is possible to use a passive infinitive after *to need, to deserve*.

PEOPLE SAY

There are no shortcuts to any place *worth* ***going***.*

English proverb

❖ ❖ ❖

A clean hand *wants* **no** ***washing***.*

English proverb

KEEP SMILING

"Doctor," she said loudly into the room, "I want you to say frankly what's wrong with me."

He surveyed her from head to foot. "Madam," he said at length, "I've just three things to tell you."

"First, your weight *wants* ***reducing*** **by nearly fifty pounds**."

"Second, your beauty would be improved if you used about one tenth as much rouge and lipstick."

"And third, I'm an artist – the doctor lives on the next floor."

❖ ❖ ❖

TIGER HUNTING

A man who had travelled in Bengal was asked if he liked tiger hunting. "Well!" said the man "I certainly enjoyed ***hunting*** **tigers**, but I must confess I hated ***being hunted*** by a tiger."

II. The perfect and non-perfect forms of the gerund differ in that a *non-perfect form* denotes an action *simultaneous* with or *posterior* to that of the finite verb form and a *perfect gerund* denotes an action *prior* to that of the finite verb.

The non-perfect gerund	Translation	Comments
He **is** surprised at *seeing* you here.	Он удивлен, что видит тебя здесь.	An action simultaneous with the present. (**is**)
He **was** surprised at *seeing* you there.	Он был удивлен, что увидел тебя там.	An action simultaneous with the past. (**was**)
He'**ll be** surprised at *seeing* you here.	Он будет удивлен, если увидит тебя здесь.	An action simultaneous with the future. (**will be**)

The perfect gerund	Translation	Comments
He **is** surprised at your not *having come*.	Он удивлен, что вы не пришли.	An action prior to the present moment. (**is**)
He **was** surprised at your not *having come*.	Он был удивлен, что вы не пришли.	An action prior to the past moment. (**was**)
He'**ll be** surprised at your not *having come*.	Он будет удивлен, что вы не пришли.	An action prior to the future moment. (**will be**)

We are sure of the cargoes always ***arriving*** on time.
Мы уверены, что грузы всегда приходят вовремя.

We are sure of the cargoes ***having*** already ***arrived***.
Мы уверены, что грузы уже пришли.

He is unconscious of ***having given*** her the slightest ground for offence and in general of ***being*** in the wrong.
Он не осознает, что дал ей хоть какой-то повод для обиды, и вообще, что он не прав.

The perfect gerund always indicates priority, while the meaning of the non-perfect gerund may vary and depends to a great extent on the context, that is:

1) on the lexical meaning of the finite verb it refers to, and
2) on the preposition it combines with.

Thus **the non-perfect gerund** may denote *priority*

a) when used after the following verbs:

to apologize *извиняться, приносить извинения*	***to forgive*** *прощать*	***to reproach*** *упрекать*
to excuse *извинять*	***to punish*** *наказывать*	***to thank*** *благодарить*
to forget *забывать*	***to remember*** *помнить*	

I don't **remember** ever ***seeing*** you.
Я не помню, чтобы когда-нибудь видел вас.

I **thank** you for ***coming***.
Спасибо, что пришли.

Excuse my ***interrupting*** you.
Извините, что прервал вас.

He **apologized** for ***bringing*** so many people with him.
Он извинился за то, что привел с собой столько людей.

The mother **punished** her child for ***telling*** her a lie.
Мать наказала ребенка за то, что он ей солгал.

He'll never **forgive** your ***letting*** him ***down***.
Он никогда не простит тебе, что ты его подвел.

She couldn't **forget** ***visiting*** London.
Она не могла забыть, как она ездила (свою поездку) в Лондон.

He **reproached** me for not ***visiting*** them.
Он упрекнул меня в том, что я не навестил их.

b) after the prepositions ***on (upon), after, without***

She went away **without** ***seeing*** me.
Она ушла, не повидав меня.

On ***turning*** round the corner he was surprised to see a new building.
Повернув за угол, он с удивлением увидел новое здание.

After ***reading*** the poem twice she could recite it.
Прочитав стихотворение дважды, она могла прочесть его наизусть.

In all the above cases the priority is not stressed. It is of no importance to emphasize it. But if the priority is emphasized, **the perfect gerund** is used.

I don't **remember** ***having*** ever ***seen*** you before.
Не помню, чтобы когда-нибудь видел вас раньше.

She **apologized** for ***having caused*** so much trouble.
Она извинилась за то, что причинила столько беспокойства.

After *having travelled* all over the world for so many years he settled down in the suburbs of London.
Пропутешествовав столько лет по всему миру, он поселился в пригороде Лондона.

KEEP SMILING

Soon after Al Smith was elected governor of New York for the first time he went to Sing Sing to visit the state's prison. *After* ***being shown*** **the buildings by the warden** the governor was asked to speak to the inmates. He was embarrassed, having never spoken to the inmates of a prison before, and did not know quite how to begin. Finally he said: "My fellow citizens!" Then he remembered that when one goes to state's prison he is no longer a citizen. So the governor was even more embarrassed, and said: "My fellow convicts!" That did not sound just right, so Al said: "Well, anyhow, I'm glad to see so many of you here."

❖ ❖ ❖

TOO YOUNG TO KNOW THE TRUTH

"I *remember* ***fighting*** **for my life against sixteen cannibals**, when I was young, and only one ran away–, " the old gentleman said to little Bobby.

"But," said Bobby, "last year you told me there were eight cannibals."

"Yes," said the old gentleman, "but you were too young then to know the whole horrible truth."

The non-perfect gerund can also denote an action referring *to the future*:

a) after some verbs:

to hope *надеяться предвкушать*	***to look forward*** *ожидать*	***to suggest*** *предлагать*
to insist *настаивать*	***to object*** *возражать*	***to think*** *подумать, придумать, представить себе*
to intend *намереваться*	***to plan*** *планировать, намереваться*	

We **intend *travelling*** round Europe in June.
В июне мы намерены поехать путешествовать по Европе.

We're **looking forward to *travelling*** round Europe.
Мы с нетерпением ждем поездки по Европе.

I **don't object to** your ***going*** on a trip to Europe.
Я не возражаю против того, чтобы вы отправились в путешествовать по Европе.

I **suggest *writing*** him a letter.
Я предлагаю написать ему письмо.

We're **not planning *taking*** our exams in May.
Мы не планируем сдавать экзамены в мае.

b) after the nouns (***intention, plan, hope***)

I have no **intention** of ***visiting*** the man again in the near future.
У меня нет намерения (Я не собираюсь) снова навешать этого человека в ближайшем будушем.

There's no **hope** of ***seeing*** him again.
Нет надежды увидеть его снова.

c) after the adjectives (***keen*** *– сильно желающий чего-либо, стремяшийся к чему-либо)*

My mother is **keen** on my ***marrying*** a good man.
Мама очень хочет, чтобы я вышла замуж за хорошего человека.

d) after the preposition ***before***.

You must have some rest **before *taking*** exams.
Перед экзаменами тебе надо отдохнуть.

A non-perfect gerund may also have no time reference or may refer *to no particular time*.

There's (It's) no use ***crying*** over spilt milk.*
Потерянного не вернешь.

Growing flowers is a pleasant occupation.
Выращивать цветы — приятное занятие.

KEEP SMILING

A WALKING-STICK

A short-tempered old gentleman lost his stick and in a fit of temper accused his servant of ***having stolen*** **it**. His friend, who knew the old man's absent-mindedness, tried to prove his servant's innocence. "Why, you know that the stick couldn't have walked off by itself," retorted the owner of the stick. "Most certainly it couldn't," said the friend with a smile, "unless it was a walking-stick!"

I. EXERCISES

1

Define the syntactical function of the gerund or gerundial phrase.
Say what part of speech this function is typical of.

MODEL

Smoking is harmful for one's health.

Smoking is a single gerund used in the function of *the subject*. The use of the gerund in this function demonstrates its *nominal* feature as this function is typical of the noun.

1. Travelling is my favourite occupation when on holiday.
2. What I like best is travelling.
3. I like travelling all over the world.
4. Seeing him is always a pleasure.
5. I remember seeing him at his place.
6. My dream is seeing him again.
7. His duty was giving the future some stability.
8. The worst part was knowing you wouldn't come.
9. Seeing the man like that was enough revenge for her.
10. Driving with Maggie was always a silent business.
11. Esther couldn't help thinking wistfully of her bedtime cup of tea.
12. That woman likes sticking needles into me.

2

In exercise 1 find the words referring to the gerund and define their syntactical functions.
In what way does this combinability characterize the gerund?
Point out separately the combinability typical of the noun and that of the verb.

см. стр. 31

MODEL

Your *painting* the house now is a waste of time.

Your *painting* the house now is a gerundial construction used in the function of the subject. In this construction the gerund has the combinability of both *the noun* and *the verb. Like a noun* it combines with a possessive pronoun used as an attribute to the gerund and *like a verb* it takes a direct object *(the house)* and is modified by an adverbial modifier of time *(now)*.

3

Comment on the verbal and nominal features of the gerunds.
Translate the sentences into Russian.

MODEL

I'm sorry **for *having caused* you so much trouble yesterday**.
Мне жаль, что я доставил вам столько беспокойства вчера.

The pointed out gerundial phrase is used in the function of a prepositional object which manifests the *nominal* features of the gerund as this function is typical of the noun. ***Having caused*** is a perfect gerund, the category of perfect is a *verbal* category, besides that the *verbal* features of the gerund are manifested by the fact that the gerund in this phrase takes two objects – the direct object *trouble* and the indirect object *you*. And one more *verbal* feature of the gerund in this case is that it is modified by an adverbial modifier of time *yesterday*.

1. Oh, I simply love riding.
2. He insisted on going alone.
3. He looked at Mr. Murdstone as if to make sure of his not being displeased.
4. Would you mind going there now?
5. I didn't bear thinking of our fate at this time of the night.
6. Sorry for phoning you so early.
7. I'll look forward to seeing you again.
8. You would insist on always arguing with your father.
9. I don't object to being always seen with you anywhere.

10. She allowed him to provoke her into losing her temper almost at once.
11. She was getting away with this without suffering the unpleasant consequences.
12. Instead of shaking her hand or waving a careless good-bye he startled her by lifting her back on to the platform.

4

Comment on the form of the gerund using the given models.

MODEL 1 **writing** – It is a non-perfect active gerund.

MODEL 2 **being written** – It is a non-perfect passive gerund.

MODEL 3 **having written** – It is a perfect active gerund.

MODEL 4 **having been written** – It is a perfect passive gerund.

A	B	C
1. having done	1. shaving	1. having been driven
2. moving	2. having burnt	2. being offered
3. being closed	3. having been planned	3. helping
4. having been read	4. being treated	4. having drawn
5. thinking	5. listening	5. being made
6. being taken	6. having joined	6. reaching
7. telling	7. being used	7. having heard
8. being interrupted	8. having been mentioned	8. selling

5

Choose the right form of the gerund according to the definition given below.

The Perfect Active Gerund

1. being washed
2. having been washed
3. washing
4. having washed

The Non-Perfect Passive Gerund

1. having translated
2. being translated
3. having been translated
4. translating

The Non-Perfect Active Gerund

1. leaving
2. having left
3. being left
4. having been left

The Perfect Passive Gerund

1. treating
2. being treated
3. having been treated
4. having treated

6 **Match the given forms of the gerund with the proper definition.**

1. being invited
2. having been mentioned
3. having reached
4. asking
5. having been dismissed
6. having been kicked
7. smiling
8. being painted
9. having suggested
10. being

the perfect active gerund

the non-perfect passive gerund

the non-perfect active gerund

the perfect passive gerund

7 **Give all the possible gerundial forms of the following verbs.**

A. *Transitive verbs*		B. *Intransitive verbs*	
test	check	skate	think
spend	type	swim	ski
finish	make	speak	smile

8

Supply all the missing gerundial forms of the following verbs.
Pay attention to the verb being transitive or intransitive.

eat:	eating, ...	***dance:***	dancing, ...
copy:	having copied, ...	***tell:***	having been told, ...
jump:	having jumped, ...	***cook:***	cooking, ...
discuss:	being discussed, ...	***become:***	becoming, ...
buy:	having been bought, ...	***arrive:***	having arrived, ...

9

Give the non-perfect active or passive form of the following gerunds:

Active Voice:	**Passive Voice:**
having been started	making
being shot	having fried
having been washed	typing
being marked	having sold
having been decorated	holding
being found	having given
having been organized	discussing
having been checked	having cooked
being translated	paying
having been met	having copied
having been presented	distributing
being reproduced	having locked

10

Give the perfect active or passive form of the following gerunds:

Active Voice:	**Passive Voice:**
being surprised	sewing
having been broken	having closed
being locked	setting
having been reported	having cleaned
being shown	investigating

having been analysed
being examined
having been wounded
being booked
having been cut
being pressed
having been fixed
having surrounded
dusting
having polished
writing
having painted
pushing
having taught

11

A. Find and correct mistakes in the definition of the form of the gerunds.

1. being shown – a non-perfect active gerund
2. driving – a perfect active gerund
3. having phoned – a non- perfect passive gerund
4. having been deceived – a perfect active gerund
5. visiting – a non-perfect passive gerund
6. being frightened – a perfect passive gerund
7. having been offended – a non-perfect active gerund
8. having burnt – a perfect passive gerund

B. Find and correct mistakes in the name of each group of the gerunds.

The Non-Perfect Active Gerund	*The Non-Perfect Passive Gerund*
1. having been washed	1. watching
2. having been found	2. laughing
3. having been shut	3. understanding
4. having been read	4. helping
5. having been written	5. promising

The Perfect Active Gerund	*The Perfect Passive Gerund*
1. being saved	1. having changed
2. being left	2. having eaten
3. being held	3. having decorated
4. being helped	4. having heard
5. being fetched	5. having gone

C. Give the proper name to each group of the gerunds and find the form that does not belong to the group.

I.
1. being unlocked
2. being used
3. being plastered
4. being fine
5. being covered
6. being fixed

II.
1. having been brought
2. having been taught
3. having been stolen
4. having been discussed
5. having drawn
6. having been cleaned

III.
1. whistling
2. playing
3. beating
4. being watched
5. arguing
6. jumping

IV.
1. having forgotten
2. having explained
3. having swept
4. having hidden
5. having been treated
6. having thought

12

Choose the sentences where the forms of the gerund denote
1) an action simultaneous with or posterior to the action expressed by the finite verb,
2) an action prior to the action expressed by the finite verb.
Note the non-perfect gerunds denoting priority.

MODEL 1

She **liked** ***visiting*** her friends.

The gerund ***visiting*** denotes an action *simultaneous* with the action expressed by the finite verb **liked**.

MODEL 2

He **told** me about ***having been visited*** by his friends.

The gerund ***having been visited*** denotes an action *prior* to the action expressed by the finite verb **told**.

см. стр. 37

Put the numbers of the sentences you have chosen in the corresponding box.

Model 1	Model 2
1	

1. She liked ***riding*** a horse.
2. I feel better after being operated on.
3. I regret being rude to your sister.
4. She was tired of washing up.
5. Travelling to work by train takes me an hour.
6. She hates being treated like a child.
7. The boy denied having lost the money.
8. Your parents will mind your having married Jane.
9. My brother will help you in decorating the flat.
10. He disliked going out.
11. He was accused of having changed his position.
12. Talking to Emily is a great pleasure.
13. I am thinking of helping him.
14. You will regret having left your wife.
15. They blamed you for using their phone so often.
16. The window opened without having been knocked at.
17. They thanked him for calling them.

13

Choose the sentences where the non-perfect gerund denotes an action
1) preceding or
2) following the action denoted by the finite verb.
What are the facts determining the meaning of the non-perfect gerund?

MODEL 1

He will never **forget** ***taking*** *this exam*.

The gerundial phrase ***taking this exam*** is used after the finite verb of *recollection* **forget**. The gerund ***taking*** indicates *priority*.

MODEL 2

She **told** me about ***going*** *to London in a couple of days.*

The context modifies the meaning of the non-perfect gerund in the phrase ***going*** *to London in a couple of days.*
The gerund ***going*** denotes an action *following* the action of the finite verb **told**.

MODEL 3

On ***hearing*** *his words* she turned back.

The preposition *on* introducing the gerundial phrase ***on hearing his words*** suggests *immediate priority* expressed by the gerund ***hearing***.

1. On being reminded of his promise he phoned them immediately.
2. His mother thanked us for helping her.
3. We remember missing the train once.
4. On hearing the door bell she ran downstairs to open the door.
5. He should be rewarded for coming to the boy's rescue.
6. On telling him the truth, I gave him a hug.
7. After thinking a little he sighed with relief.
8. He reproached her father for not being nice enough to her.
9. I don't feel like playing for this team tomorrow.
10. On seeing us he rushed forward.
11. I am all for making the right decision.
12. After getting rid of this bad habit he felt much better.
13. Our neighbours blamed us for not warning them about it.
14. My friend told me about publishing the dictionary next year.
15. There is some hope of getting this best-seller.

14 **Translate the sentences where the non-perfect gerund expresses an action following that of the finite verb. What are the verbs, nouns, adjectives and prepositions which imply reference to a future event?**

MODEL

She **is looking forward** ***to going*** *to London in the summer.*
Она с нетерпением ждет ***поездки*** в Лондон этим летом.
Она очень хочет ***поехать*** летом в Лондон.

1. We intended staying there longer.
2. She insists on going sightseeing tomorrow.
3. They agreed to ask for his advice before making some decision.
4. He had no intention of spending the rest of his life working as a taxi-driver.
5. There was little prospect of taking the children to the seaside.
6. His parents objected to spending so much money.
7. My classmates suggested buying flowers for the teacher.
8. Sid was keen on playing chess.
9. Before going to bed you should take a warm shower.
10. There was little hope of catching the train.
11. We had no plan of buying a new flat.
12. The students were looking forward to starting the academic year.

15 **A. Use the gerund in different forms in the Active Voice.**

1. Charles is not used to *(to travel)* alone.
2. He phoned her without *(to ask for someone's permission)*.
3. My brother is fond of *(to play a trick)* on me.
4. I am against *(to invite)* them to the party.
5. Don't you remember *(to see)* him before?

6. *(To watch)* a cowboy film is a pleasure for any boy.
7. Her father's hobby was *(to collect)* ancient coins.
8. Our relatives came back after *(to be away)* for seven years.
9. Thank you for *(to look after)* my house.
10. Jane hates *(to have)* a big breakfast.
11. You should give up *(to drink)* too much coffee.
12. We had no chance of *(to catch)* the 5 o'clock train to Manchester.
13. I am afraid you will regret *(to shout)* at the boy.
14. Ken took his dad's car without *(to warn)* him about that.

B. Use the gerund in the Active or Passive Voice.

1. She likes *(to interrupt)* her mother but she hates *(to interrupt)*.
2. He is used to *(to treat)* his parents with respect and they like *(to treat)* in that way.
3. Which is better? *(To leave)* a large legacy to someone or *(to leave)* without any?
4. Children are fond of *(to ask)* hundreds of questions and many parents don't often feel like *(to ask)* about anything.
5. Robert insists on *(to tell)* the truth as he himself is used to *(to tell)* the truth.
6. Ralph likes *(to talk)* down to his pals but he is against *(to talk)* to in that way.
7. We insist on *(to send)* for as soon as he arrives and on *(to send)* a telegram to his mother.

C. Use an active gerund.
Write out the verbs and adjectives requiring an active gerund in the passive meaning.
Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. The boy deserved *(to punish)*.
2. The room needs *(to decorate)*.
3. The floor wants *(to polish)*.
4. The suggestion was worth *(to discuss)*.

5. The project required *(to improve)*.
6. The house wants *(to reconstruct)*.
7. Her hair needs *(to cut)*.
8. They deserve *(to get)* a higher salary.
9. The shoes want *(to repair)*.
10. She finds the film worth *(to see)*.
11. Your son needs *(to help)*.
12. The jeans want *(to shorten)*.
13. The watch requires *(to fix)*.
14. The top-student deserved *(to get)* the prize.

16

Use the appropriate form of the gerund. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. *(To quote)* from memory is a problem for me.
2. Dick hates *(to disturb)*.
3. Tracy opened the door without *(to knock)* at it.
4. It's no use *(to argue)* about tastes.
5. I really regret *(to hurt)* you.
6. Bobby likes *(to treat)* like a grown-up.
7. There is some chance of *(to get)* a cheaper ticket.
8. You can improve the taste of meat by *(to pepper)* it.
9. Oliver dreams of *(to become)* a pilot.
10. Don't forget to switch off the light before *(to leave)*.
11. All of a sudden I remembered *(to see)* the lady before.
12. On *(to tell)* the time, he hurried home.
13. They kept on *(to discuss)* the new television film.
14. If you have an expensive blouse, don't risk *(to wash)* it yourself.
15. On *(to take)* to hospital, she was examined by the surgeon.
16. They decided to visit their boss without *(to invite)*.
17. The television needs *(to repair)*.
18. Avoid *(to use)* bad words.
19. The set of short stories is worth *(to read)*.
20. I am surprised at *(to talk)* to like that.
21. You can't find the way without *(to make use)* of a map.

17

Make up a sentence.
Use various forms of the gerund.
Translate your sentences.
Pay attention to the perfect and voice distinctions of the gerund.

I like	swimming.
	having offended him.
I am (dis) pleased with	being treated like that.
	playing chess.
	being visited by somebody.
He is tired of	finding the house.
	being invited to a concert.
She regrets	having met him once.
I had no difficulty in	having a cold shower.
	being taken to a play.
We remember	getting a letter from her.
He hates	looking round shops.

Give your own examples using different forms of the gerund.

18

Make the following sentences simple.
Use a gerund in the required form.

MODEL

I'm sure **that she'll come soon.** →
I'm sure **of her *coming* soon.**

	he'll come soon.
	your friend will come soon.
	the children will come soon.
	Mike will come soon.
I am sure that	Mr Brown will come soon.
	he came on time.
	Mike has already come.
	Mr Brown has come.

I'm afraid that	my friend was late. you will be late. Jane may be late. George has been late.
He imagined that	you had lost the key. he had forgotten the text of his speech. you would write him a letter. John didn't know his address.

19 **Convert the subordinate clauses into gerundial phrases. Use the proper form of the gerund.**

MODEL

I can't translate this text **if I don't use a dictionary.** →
I can't translate the text **without *using* a dictionary**.

1. He is pleased that he will invite a lot of people to his party.
2. He is pleased that he invited a lot of people to his party.
3. He is pleased that he is always invited by his friends.
4. He is pleased that he was invited to the party.
5. The letters are sealed before they are posted.
6. After the plants had been trimmed, they were watered.
7. After the plants had been trimmed, the gardener watered them.
8. After the gardener had trimmed the plants, he watered them.
9. The light had gone out again because the electricity is out of order.
10. The light went out again because the lamp hadn't been repaired.
11. They hate it when the same thing is repeated again and again.
12. They hate to repeat the same thing again.
13. I can't read the text if I don't see it properly.
14. The text can't be read if it isn't seen.

20 **Think back to your childhood and talk about some particular things you remember doing.**
Write three sentences.

MODEL

I remember *Mother* ***sitting*** *by my bed,* ***reading*** *some fairy tale to me and then* ***kissing*** *me good-night and* ***switching off*** *the light.*

Suggested verbs:

to bite	to copy	to pay	to post
to break	to fall	to play	to talk,
to buy	to go	to phone	etc.

21 **Translate into English by simple sentences with gerundial constructions.**

1. Я уверен в том, что этот врач дает разумные советы.
2. Я уверен в том, что этот врач дал мне разумный совет.
3. Я уверен в том, что ему дадут разумный совет.
4. Я уверен в том, что ему дали разумный совет.
5. Мы рассчитываем на то, что выберем хорошего президента компании.
6. Мы рассчитываем на то, что выбрали хорошего президента компании.
7. Мы рассчитываем на то, что его выберут президентом.
8. Мы рассчитываем на то, что его выбрали президентом.
9. Студенты настаивали на том, чтобы занятия перенесли на другой день.
10. Студенты настаивали на том, чтобы все участвовали в конференции.
11. Студенты были недовольны тем, что их не допустили к участию в конференции.
12. Студенты были недовольным тем, что их не приглашают на такие конференции.

22

Translate the sentences into English.
Pay attention to the use of the active and passive forms of the gerund.

1. Не люблю, когда мне мешают.
2. Он не привык льстить *(to flatter)*.
3. Она довольна, что с ней разговаривают с уважением.
4. Комнату надо оклеить.
5. Она удивлена, что ее пригласили на банкет.
6. Это прибор для измерения тока.
7. Есть шанс, что меня отправят в Париж.
8. Он бросил курить.
9. Они недовольны тем, что им мало платят.
10. Ты привык вставать и ложиться рано.
11. Они думают, что им помогут родители.
12. У нее было впечатление, что ее обижают.
13. Мыльные оперы не стоит смотреть.

23

Translate the sentences into English.
Pay attention to the use of the perfect and non-perfect forms of the gerund.

1. Она обвиняет меня в том, что я обманул ее.
2. Это удержало меня от того, чтобы выбрать факультет журналистики.
3. Боюсь, мы помешали соседям.
4. Идея сходить в театр или кино казалась банальной.
5. Она была поглощена чтением романа.
6. Я вспомнил, что когда-то видел это лицо.
7. Никогда не забуду, как однажды беседовал с ним об искусстве.
8. Она навестила нас после многолетнего отсутствия.
9. Сожалею, что сказал Вам неправду.
10. Благодарю вас за помощь нам.
11. Она заслужила наказание.
12. Войдя в комнату, он включил свет.
13. Прежде чем вызвать такси, мы упаковали веши.

THE USE OF THE GERUND

Pride is pleasure arising **from a man's *thinking* too highly of himself.**

B. Spinoza

In the sentence the gerund can perform any syntactical function typical of a noun. When used like a noun it may function

a) alone (a **single** gerund)

I like ***swimming***.

But the single gerund occurs very seldom.

b) as *the head word* of **a gerundial phrase** (that is *a gerund accompanied by words referring to it*). A gerundial phrase functions as one *indivisible* part of the sentence.

I like ***swimming* in the sea**.

c) as *part* of **a gerundial construction**.

A gerundial construction is a syntactical unit consisting of a *nominal* element (a noun or a pronoun) and a *verbal* element (a gerund). The gerund is in predicate relation to the noun or pronoun (the nominal element of the construction), that is in the construction the gerund

denotes an action performed by or to the person or non-person expressed by the nominal element. Thus the relations between the elements of the construction resemble those between the subject and the predicate of the sentence, that's why the gerundial construction is used when the doer of the action of the gerund *does not coincide* with the subject of the sentence.

The gerundial constructions are mainly the property of written English and are rarely used in conversational English.

Like a gerundial phrase a gerundial construction functions as one *indivisible* part of the sentence.

The nominal element of the construction can be expressed by

a) a noun in the *genitive* case or a *possessive* pronoun denoting *a living being.*

She hadn't known how much she had missed ***Jake's* supporting her** these two last years.
Она даже не знала, как все эти два года ей не хватало поддержки Джейка.

Did he mourn **his *father's* passing**?
Он оплакивал кончину отца?

I'm glad it's all turned out well despite ***your* going behind my back**.
Я рад, что все благополучно кончилось, хоть вы и действовали за моей спиной.

Possessives and genitives are restricted almost entirely to pronouns and proper names.

b) a noun in the *common* case or a pronoun in the *objective* case. The use of this form reflects a growing tendency in the modern language. The possessive form is considered to be more literary. The objective form is found mainly in the spoken language, that is

in informal English it is more common to use forms like *me, you, John* instead of the possessives *my, your* and genitives like *John's.*

It's like ***people*** **trying to get to the moon**.
Это похоже на то, как люди пытаются попасть на Луну.

You don't mind ***Caroline*** **working on papers alone**?
Ты не против того, чтобы Каролина занималась документами одна?

It won't do any good ***you*** **getting all worked up**.
Совершенно ни к чему тебе себя взвинчивать.

NOTE:

The genitive case of the noun is impossible
1) when the nominal element consists of *two or more nouns* or
2) if the noun has *a post-modifying attribute*.

I. The boss insisted ***on the engineer and the mechanic*** **taking part in the work**.
Начальник настаивал на том, чтобы и инженер и механик приняли участие в этой работе.

Will you approve **of *my friend and me* attending the class as visitors**?
Вы согласны, если мы с другом посидим на занятиях как вольнослушатели?

We insist **on *rich and poor* being treated alike**.
Мы настаиваем на том, чтобы с богатыми и бедными обращались одинаково.

II. There can be no object in ***the man of his age*** **staying here now**.
Нет смысла человеку его возраста сейчас оставаться здесь.

I can't think **of *a man of talent* composing such music**.
Не могу себе представить, чтобы талантливый человек сочинял такую музыку.

c) a noun in the *common* case or a *possessive* pronoun if the *nominal element* of the construction denotes a *lifeless thing*.

He didn't mind ***the car* blocking the door**.
Он не возражал против того, что машина загораживает дверь.

He didn't mind either the car or even ***its* blocking the way**.
Он не возражал ни против машины, ни даже против того, что она загораживает дорогу.

d) a pronoun which has *no category of case* (such as, for instance, *demonstrative*, *universal* and *indefinite* pronouns).

I looked at my friends and was surprised at ***both (each, all) of them* being puzzled**.
Я посмотрел на своих друзей и был удивлен, что оба они (каждый из них, все они) были озадачены.

Your generosity takes ***some* getting used to**.
К Вашей щедрости нужно привыкнуть.

You and I have ***some* talking to do**.
Нам надо поговорить.

She was responsible for ***this* being done properly**.
Она отвечала за то, чтобы это было сделано хорошо.

THE GERUNDIAL CONSTRUCTION

I		II
The Nominal Element	+	The Verbal Element

1. A noun in the Genitive case in the Common case	1. A single gerund
2. A possessive pronoun	2. A gerundial phrase
3. A personal pronoun in the Objective case	
4. A demonstrative/ universal/indefinite pronoun	

The man's The man His Him This Everybody Some	talking talking to me interrupting each other being interrupted	was important. surprised me.

PEOPLE SAY

We do not mind **our not *arriving* anywhere** nearly so much as **our not *having* any company** on the way.

F. M. Colby

PEOPLE SAY

'Tis sweet to know there is
an eye will mark
Our *coming*, and look brighter
When we come.

Lord Byron, Don Juan

KEEP SMILING

IN THE TREATMENT ROOM

Five-year-old Billy is very fond of playing with medicine-bottles and pill-boxes. You can imagine how glad he is when he finds plenty of these nice toys in the doctor's treatment room. His young mother, who has come to consult her doctor, lets the child enjoy himself. He clatters the bottles, opens the boxes and generally puts everything out of order. The doctor frowns and looks askance at the unruly child. At last hearing some extra loud noise the mother says, "I hope, dear doctor, you don't mind **Billy *playing* with the nice shiny bottles there**!" "No," says the doctor, "I don't, if you don't mind **your Billy *getting poisoned***."

❖ ❖ ❖

OPTIMISTS AND PESSIMISTS

An optimist is a soldier who knows that the command "Shun" will be followed by an "At ease" command; a pessimist if defined as a soldier who if aware of **the command "At ease" *being followed* by a "Shun."**

KEEP SMILING

NO GROUNDS FOR OFFENCE

Doctor A. was very fond of speaking and was always greatly annoyed **at anybody *being* inattentive while he spoke**. Once when he was delivering a lecture on insomnia, Doctor A. caught one of his students nodding. After the lecture he started upbraiding the guilty one for going to sleep while his professor was speaking. "Why should you be so angry, dear doctor?" said the good-natured young man. "You should be pleased **at your speech *having* such a strong healing effect**."

❖ ❖ ❖

AN EXPERIENCED PATIENT

A doctor insists on **his patient *taking* an emetic** as the man has eaten something which disagrees with him.

"It's of no use **your *giving* me an emetic**, dear doctor," says the patient. "I tried it twice in my life and both the times it refused *staying* in my stomach."

❖ ❖ ❖

KING HENRY THE SIXTH WANTED TO BE SPANKED

The first and only child in history who approved **of his own *spanking*** and who chose his own nurse for that purpose was King Henry the Sixth of England. He became king on September 1, 1422, when he was nine months old, and the baby's first decree, which was certified with his thumbprint, appointed Alice Butler his nurse and allowed her "to spank us reasonably from time to time."

II. EXERCISES

1 **Read the following replacing the pronouns in the objective case or nouns in the common case by possessives and genitives:**

MODEL

Our teacher won't like **us** coming late to the lecture. →
Our teacher won't like **our** coming late to the lecture.

I don't mind **Cyril** talking to you. →
I don't mind **Cyril's** talking to you.

1. Please excuse **us** calling you so late.
2. I'm afraid of **John** losing the way.
3. Do you remember **me** asking for the book before?
4. Our friends objected to **us** leaving so soon.
5. I don't much like the idea of **Mary** going home alone in the dark.
6. I always remember **him** complaining of **you** staying so long.
7. I wonder why you hate **David** wearing this pink shirt and green tie.
8. Did your husband agree to **you** coming to see me?
9. I just can't understand **them** inviting everybody to see the film again.
10. We can't stand **you** singing out of tune.
11. Please forgive **me** asking such a personal question.
12. We shall miss **you** visiting us in the evenings.

2 **Read the following replacing the possessives and genitives in bold type by pronouns in the objective case and nouns in the common case.**

MODEL

You must forgive **our** interrupting you in this way. →
You must forgive **us** interrupting you in this way.

My friend can't understand **Betty's** treating him like that. →
My friend can't understand **Betty** treating him like that.

1. Michael doesn't like the idea of **my** learning to drive his car.
2. The teacher dislikes **their** coming to his lectures after the bell.
3. I remember **your** coming in long after midnight.
4. I don't fancy **his** living with us so long.
5. If you don't mind **my** saying so, we should do the whole thing again.
6. I can't understand **their** forgetting to phone us.
7. I was afraid of **Mary's** leaving without me.
8. The weather won't stop **their** playing in the match.
9. My parents don't like **my** going out alone at night.
10. I can excuse **Betty's** being rude to me but I can't forgive **her** being rude to my parents.
11. I'll never forget **Cyril's** jumping over the fence.
12. I'll have to insist on **his** not disturbing us during the lesson.

3 **Complete the following using a gerundial construction.**

MODEL

I remember *(he, to ask for)* that book last Friday. →
I remember ***him (his)*** **asking** for that book last Friday.

см. стр. 55

1. My wife hates *(I, to read)* a newspaper at breakfast.
2. My parents object to *(I, to stay up)* late.
3. I can't insist on *(you, to leave)* so early.
4. This change of the timetable will mean *(we, to leave)* much later every day.
5. Do you mind *(I, to smoke)* here?
6. I don't like *(she, to read)* my letters.
7. I can't understand *(you, to read)* my letters.
8. Please excuse *(we, to read)* your letters.
9. He enjoyed *(she, to play)* his music.
10. Can you imagine *(I, to wear)* a pink skirt and a yellow blouse?
11. I didn't mind *(they, to come)* late to the lecture.
12. It won't be any use *(you, to try)* to borrow any more money.
13. They brought me the journal but I imagine *(it, to give)* to my colleague.

4 **Make one sentence out of two by using a gerundial construction.**

MODEL

The neighbours are displeased. She invites her friends every day. →
The neighbours are displeased at ***her* inviting** her friends every day.

1. The neighbours object. She invited her friends again.
2. We are pleased. He was invited to take part in the conference.
3. They were invited to the disco. I've heard about it.
4. He will be sent abroad. The boss insists on it.
5. The programmer is always on time with his work. You may rely on him.
6. She is fond of it when her friends take her out.

7. I'm really surprised. The concert was over so early.
8. Are you proud that your pupils speak so fluently?
9. Our teacher is displeased. This student always does his exercises badly.
10. Our teacher is displeased. He did his exercise badly again.
11. The teacher is always displeased when the work is done carelessly.
12. Are you not surprised? Your friend was introduced to our greatest singer.
13. The children are left at home alone. I disapprove of it, they are too small.

THE SYNTACTICAL FUNCTIONS OF THE GERUND

It's wiser ***being*** **good than bad**;
It's safer ***being*** **meek than fierce**;
It's fitter ***being*** **sane than mad**.

R. Browning, Apparent Failure

Gossiping and ***lying*** go hand in hand.*

English proverb

Due to its nominal features the gerund in the sentence (that is, a single gerund, or a gerundial phrase, or a gerundial construction) may perform all the functions typical of the noun. Thus the gerund may be used as the subject, the predicative, the direct object, the prepositional object, the attribute. When combined with a preposition it can, like a noun, perform the function of an adverbial modifier. When the gerund manifests its verbal features it may function as part of a compound verbal phasal predicate.

So the gerund may have the following syntactical functions:

1) the subject,
2) the predicative,
3) part of a compound verbal phasal predicate,
4) the object
   a) the direct object,
   b) the prepositional object,
5) the attribute,
6) the adverbial modifier (the adverbial).

1. THE SUBJECT

In this case the gerund as a rule ***precedes*** the predicate and occupies ***the front position*** in the sentence.

Reading her way through the library books had provided her with most of her education.
То, что она читала подряд все книги в библиотеке, дало ей больше всего знаний.

His being rude to her again was more than she could cope with.
Она не в силах была смириться с тем, что он опять ей грубил.

Him going so suddenly like that brought things home to all of us.
То, что он ушел так внезапно, разъяснило нам все.

PEOPLE SAY

Eating and ***scratching*** wants but a beginning.*

English proverb

❖ ❖ ❖

Talking mends no holes.*

English proverb

❖ ❖ ❖

Being **impolite** is totally alien to the British character.

Author Inidentified

PEOPLE SAY

Reading is to the mind what exercise is to the body.

S. Richard,
The Tattler

❖ ❖ ❖

Questioning is not the mode of conversation among gentlemen.

S. Johnson,
Boswell's Life of Dr. Johnson

❖ ❖ ❖

Knowledgeable people say that ***saluting*** started as an ancient greeting among warriors to show that the right hand (the weapon hand) was empty and no harm intended.

❖ ❖ ❖

***Praising* what is lost** makes the remembrance dear.

W. Shakespeare,
All's Well that Ends Well. Act V, Sc. 3

However, the gerund-subject *may* also *follow* the predicate in sentences opening with *the introductory (formal) subject* ***it*** after the predicates expressed by such phrases as ***to be (of) no use (no good, useless), to make no (all the) difference, to be a waste of time***, etc., and also with the construction ***there is*** with the *formal subject* ***there***.

In the latter case the gerund is preceded by the negative pronoun ***no***. The formal subjects (***it*** and ***there***) are not translated into Russian.

It's no use *complaining*.
Бесполезно жаловаться.

It's just no good *all this gadding about*.
Просто ни к чему это болтание без дела.

It's a waste of time *doing your hair in such horrid weather*.
Делать прическу в такую ужасную погоду – пустая трата времени.

It makes all the difference *your being here today*.
Ваше присутствие здесь сегодня совершенно меняет дело.

It makes no difference *your coming or not*.
Нет никакой разницы, придешь ты или нет.

I'm leaving today and **there**'s *no telling when I'll see you again*.
Сегодня я уезжаю, и неизвестно, когда я снова тебя увижу.

There is *no knowing (telling) what will happen next*.
Никогда не знаешь, что случится дальше.

There is *no pleasing him*.
Ему (никак) не угодишь.

There is *no fooling him*.
Его не проведешь.

There's *no accounting for his low spirits*.
Его плохое настроение ничем не объяснишь.
(Его плохому настроению нет объяснения.)

PEOPLE SAY

It is good ***fishing*** **in troubled waters.***

English proverb

❖ ❖ ❖

It's no use ***pumping*** **a dry well.***

English proverb

❖ ❖ ❖

There is **no *accounting* for tastes.***

English proverb

❖ ❖ ❖

It's awfully hard work ***doing*** **nothing.**

O. Wilde

KEEP SMILING

"The doctor told my wife she should take exercise."

"And is she doing it?"

"If ***jumping*** **at conclusions and *running up* bills** can be called exercise."

KEEP SMILING

When Mark Twain edited a newspaper in Missouri, one of his subscribers wrote him that he had found a spider in his paper and wished to know whether it meant good luck or bad.

Twain replied: "***Finding* a spider in your paper** is neither good luck nor bad. The spider was merely looking over our paper to see which merchant was not advertising, so that he could go to that store, spin his web across the door and lead a life of undisturbed peace ever afterwards!"

❖ ❖ ❖

MAKING SURE OF SUCCESS

Two playwrights are discussing the vexed problem of creating a really good comedy. One of them who deals chiefly in translating foreign plays into his native idiom and adapting them to modern tastes says, "*There* is no ***gain-saving* that my plays are more of a success than yours**." "It's but natural," says the other, "for you never write a play unless you are sure of its having been a success somewhere else."

❖ ❖ ❖

ONE CAN NEVER TELL!

The caterpillars were sitting on a grass when a butterfly flew by. One of the caterpillars said: "***Flying*** is a foolish occupation. You'll never get me up in one of those things with wings!"

KEEP SMILING

Bob was home on leave after some time in the Army.

"Well, son, how do you like the Army?" asked his dad.

"Oh, not bad," said Bob, "but I think *there's* too much ***drilling*** **and** ***fussing*** **around between meals**."

III.1. EXERCISES

1

Point out the gerund or the gerundial phrase used as subject.
Translate the sentences into Russian.
Pay attention to the way of rendering the gerund in Russian.

MODEL

***Growing* flowers** is a nice hobby.
1) ***Выращивание*** цветов – приятное увлечение.
2) ***Выращивать*** цветы – приятное увлечение.

There is no ***accounting*** for such a failure.

formal subject **notional subject**

Такой провал ничем **не *объяснишь***.
Нет ***объяснения*** такому провалу.
Нельзя ***объяснить*** такой провал.

It's no good ***telling* lies**.

formal subject **notional subject**

Бесполезно ***лгать***.

It makes no difference ***going* there by taxi or by bus**.

formal subject **notional subject**

Нет разницы, ***ехать*** ли туда на такси или на автобусе.

Being helped is sometimes important.
Получить помощь иногда важно.
Иногда важно, **чтобы тебе *помогали***.

см. стр. 65

1. Arguing with her is useless.
2. Listening to English tapes is useful.
3. Going to the cinema too often is dull.
4. There was no pleasing him.
5. It's useless talking much.
6. Marrying somebody for his looks is not reasonable.
7. It's no good worrying any more tonight.
8. Being promoted sometimes helps a lot.
9. Getting on well with your friends makes you happy.
10. It makes all the difference getting some extra money.
11. Working nine to nine seems to be tiresome.
12. Worshipping somebody or being worshipped is dangerous.
13. It makes no difference having a talk with him or sending him a letter.
14. Parting with him may help her change her life.
15. It's no good getting married without love.
16. It will make all the difference making it up with your relatives.
17. There's no accounting for her sulks.
18. It will make no difference asking him to come.

2 **Complete the following questions in box A and answer them.**
Use the gerunds or the gerundial phrases from box B.

MODEL

A. What is more interesting...?
B. ...reading an English book in translation or in the original?
– What is more interesting: ***reading*** **an English book in translation or in the original?**
– I think, ***reading*** **an English book in the original** is much more interesting.

A.
1. What makes you healthier...?
2. What is worse...?
3. What is more exciting...?

4. What is more pleasant...?
5. What is more amusing...?
6. What is more surprising...?
7. What is more unexpected...?
8. What is more shocking...?
9. What is more upsetting...?
10. What is more tedious...?

B.
1. ...having three or five meals a day?
2. ...getting an excellent or a bad mark?
3. ...losing a job or going bankrupt?
4. ...being taken aback or surprising somebody?
5. ...cooking meals or doing the cleaning?
6. ...jogging or playing tennis?
7. ...lying in the sun or having a swim?
8. ...reading a humorous story or talking with a witty person?
9. ...seeing a crocodile in the forest or a giraffe in the river?
10. ...quarrelling or watching a quarrel?

Make up sentences.
Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as subject.

I. Drinking a lot of water	is/is not	such fun.
Having a big party		a pleasure.
Using an alarm-clock		helpful.
Having a passion for something	must be	healthy.
Giving offence to people		expensive.
Buying a Jeep		impossible.
Travelling abroad without a visa		necessary.
Playing tennis in the park		dangerous.
Using a PC		silly.
Taking offence	is, no doubt,	cruel.
Seeing them back so soon		dull.
Talking about weather		exciting.
Disobeying a person in authority		wise.

II. It	is was will be	no good of no use useless	crying. trying to persuade him. asking her for advice. having a holiday in winter. going to the seaside in winter. asking them to come. washing the blouse.
III. There	is was will be	no	avoiding my boss. stopping her. denying the idea. accounting for her rude words. predicting her future. talking her into it. understanding him. talking the matter over with them.

4 **Paraphrase the sentences.**
Use the gerund-subject in the initial position.

MODEL

It's tiresome to write quickly. →
***Writing* quickly** is tiresome.

1. It's dangerous to do such things.
2. It's pleasant to listen to music after work.
3. It interests him to learn idioms.
4. It was lovely to go to the country.
5. It's bad for her figure to eat between meals.
6. It's harmful to smoke.
7. It's difficult to learn Chinese.
8. It may cause stomach trouble to eat too much.
9. It was a great mistake to act in that way.

10. It's a bad habit to come late.
11. It's good for people to laugh.
12. It's useless to expect their help.
13. It made us tired to study all day.
14. It annoys me to hear them speak so loud.

5

Make up sentences with *it is/isn't worth + a gerund*. Translate your sentences into Russian.

MODEL

tell him the news *(affirmative)*
It's worth ***telling* him the news.**
Стоит сообщить ему эту новость.

see this ballet *(interrogative)*
Is this ballet worth ***seeing***?
Этот балет стоит посмотреть?

go there *(negative)*
It isn't worth ***going* there.**
Не стоит туда ходить.

1. learn languages *(affirmative)*
2. see the film *(negative)*
3. go in for jogging *(interrogative)*
4. go through the fast reading course *(interrogative)*
5. see the sights of St. Petersburg suburbs *(affirmative)*
6. take up driving *(affirmative)*
7. take the coat to the cleaner's after the accident *(negative)*
8. type up the whole play *(interrogative)*
9. sail into the harbour *(affirmative)*
10. look through the new book on the article *(interrogative)*
11. release the day of the election so early *(negative)*
12. recruit help from the neighbours to put out the fire *(affirmative)*

6

Point out the gerund-subject and underline it with one line and the compound nominal predicate with two lines. Translate the sentences into Russian.

MODEL

Is it **any good** ***walking*** **in the rain**?
Есть ли смысл гулять под дождем?

1. It's no good writing to him, he will not answer.
2. Is it any good going there?
3. I'm sure it's no good planting the flowers here, there's too little sun in this corner.
4. Is it any good mending these shoes?
5. It's no good asking her to come, she will stay at home.
6. It's no good speaking English to him, he doesn't know the language.
7. Is it any good locking the door?

7

Make up sentences with the introductory subject *It* and *There*.
Pay attention to the notional subject expressed by a gerund or a gerundial phrase.
Let your partner translate your sentences.

MODEL 1

– **It** is no good ***deceiving*** **your parents**.
– Ни к чему ***обманывать*** родителей.

MODEL 2

– **It** was (of) no use ***waiting*** **for them**.
– Бесполезно было ***ждать*** их.

MODEL 3

– **It** is *useless* ***attending*** **the lecture**.
– Бесполезно ***идти*** на лекцию.

MODEL 4

– **There** is no ***restraining*** **him from that**.
– От этого его ***не*** **удержишь**.

It	is was will be	no good (of) no use useless	avoiding the motorway. talking with her. trying to get in touch with him.
There	is was will be	no	avoiding another scandal. washing the floor. keeping away from them. phoning him. arriving at the station so early. teaching him English. going to this club. accounting for her caprice. discussing that topic. denying their idea.

8

Paraphrase the sentences.
Note the use of the introductory subject *It* and the notional subject expressed by a gerund or a gerundial phrase.

MODEL

Teaching **her music** won't succeed. →

It	is	*(of) no use/useless/no good* ***teaching*** **her music.**
	was will be	

1. Taking care of her won't be of any use.
2. Watching a horror film won't be of any use.
3. Attending this sports club is useless.
4. Training him as an actor won't succeed.

5. Apologizing now is of no use.
6. Accusing them won't be much good.
7. Punishing the boy is of no use.
8. Keeping him in the dark is not advisable.
9. You can't send him a message.
10. Crying over spilt milk is no use.
11. Losing your temper won't help.
12. Hoping for his assistance is useless.
13. Singing folk songs is a pleasure.
14. Painting the house was a waste of time.
15. Knowing everything isn't always good.
16. Looking down upon people is shameful.
17. Staying at the hotel is the best thing while travelling.
18. Learning rules without examples is useless.
19. Showing my friends about St. Petersburg has always been a pleasure.
20. Telling me not to worry is no use.
21. Giving children a free hand with money isn't good.

9

Complete a sentence.
Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as subject with the introductory *It* or *There*.
Make use of the infinitive phrases suggested.

MODEL 1

It's (of) no use ... *(to cry over spilt milk).*
It's (of) no use ***crying* over spilt milk.***

MODEL 2

There's no ... *(to repair this house).*
There's no ***repairing* this house.**

1. Is it any good ... *(to ask for more)*?
2. It's no good ... *(to discuss the problem).*
3. There's no ... *(to fix the clock).*
4. It's no use ... *(to complain of her).*
5. It was useless ... *(to have a date with him).*
6. It's of no use ... *(to arrange the meeting).*
7. It won't be much good ... *(to cut lectures on History).*

8. There is no ... *(to disobey him).*
9. There was no ... *(to argue with my boss).*
10. It was quite a pleasure ... *(to attend the concert).*
11. Was it any good ... *(to ask your dad for advice)*?
12. There was no ... *(to get the best-seller).*
13. It was quite a surprise ... *(to see her in Rome).*
14. It'll be no use ... *(to ring him at five).*
15. It was such fun ... *(to listen to the music).*

10

Paraphrase the sentences with the infinitive used as subject.
Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as subject.
Use the introductory *It* or *There* if possible.

MODEL 1

***To ski* in the mountains** is a pleasure. →
It's a pleasure ***skiing* in the mountains**.

MODEL 2

***To persuade* him** is impossible. →
There's *no* ***persuading* him**.

MODEL 3

***To stage* this play** is pretty dull. →
***Staging* this play** is pretty dull.

1. To make contact with her was next to impossible.
2. To compete with this firm was useless.
3. To keep the criminal in prison was necessary.
4. To go to the dentist's regularly is important.
5. To have a party with your old friends was such fun.
6. To account for their divorce was impossible.
7. To drive at breakneck speed is dangerous.
8. To call off the wedding is necessary.
9. To explain their strange engagement was impossible.
10. To talk on the same wave length is a pleasure.
11. To do environmental work is useful.
12. To stay indoors in this lovely weather is silly.
13. To get up early and not to stay up late is healthy.

11

Respond to the following.
Use *there is no + a gerund* to express impossibility.
Make use of the suggested words.

MODEL

– What's wrong with June? She's saying such strange things! *(to stop)*
– Oh, yes. When she talks *there's no* ***stopping*** **her**.

– Why not ask Kitty again to come to the party? *(to persuade)*
– No, *there's no* ***persuading*** **her**.

1. – What's the matter? Bess is giggling all the time. *(to account for one's moods)*
   – Yes, ...
2. – Philip is against my plan to stay at home in summer. *(to persuade him)*
   – No, he won't stay. ...
3. – Does your mother know about your failure at the exam? *(to deceive)*
   – Yes, ...
4. – Do you think John will take measures to prevent you from marrying his sister? *(to tell what he will do)*
   – Yes, ...
5. – I don't think you can do all this work alone. *(to get away from it)*
   – Yes, ...
6. – I hate the idea of telling James the truth. *(to avoid it)*
   – But ...
7. – It's unpardonable not to tell Bill the whole truth. *(to deny that you are right here)*
   – Yes, ...
8. – How is your mother after the flu? Is she getting any better? *(to know what may happen next)*
   – Yes, but ...

9. – My little sister is such a chatter-box. She can't shut her mouth and keeps talking all the time. *(to stop her)*
   – Yes, ...
10. – I hate wasting so much time on daily chores. *(to get away from it)*
   – Yes, but ...
11. – Do you think Stacy will try to enter the university a second time? *(to tell what she'll do)*
   – Yes, ...
12. – Calm down. Everything is over. The fire is extinguished. *(to know what the police may find in the house now)*
   – Yes, ...

12

Answer the following questions.
Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as subject.

MODEL

– What is most difficult for a gardener? *(to dig and water plants)*
– ***Digging* and *watering* plants** is most difficult for a gardener. (or: ***Digging* and *watering* plants** is.)

1. What is most dangerous when driving? *(to drive at speed)*
2. What takes you much time before going abroad? *(to get a visa)*
3. What is a must if you are going to take an English exam? *(to revise Grammar rules)*
4. What is necessary when renting a flat? *(to keep the flat clean)*
5. What is pleasant when walking in the park on a hot summer day? *(to have a rest in the shade of a large tree)*

6. What is most difficult for parents when bringing up their children?
   (to teach them to love people)
7. What is important when listening to a lecturer?
   (to take notes)
8. What is advisable when looking for a job?
   (to put an advertisement regularly in a weekly newspaper and to read advertisements about job vacancies)
9. What is desirable when choosing a career?
   (to get the necessary information about the occupation you are going to choose)
10. What is important when doing business?
    (to keep one's word)

13

Respond to the following.
Express impossibility of some action.
Use the formal subject *There* and a gerund or a gerundial phrase as the notional subject.
Use the suggested verbs.

MODEL

– Did Brian agree to join us? *(to persuade)*
– No, he refused to and **there**'s no ***persuading* him**.

1. – Sid says that he is pretty busy and he can't take a trip to New York. *(to deny)*
   – ... he is right. But we've got nobody else to send there.
2. – I hear your son made up his mind to enter the journalist faculty, didn't he? *(to prevent him from it)*
   – Unfortunately he did and ...
3. – He tried to pretend that nothing unusual had happened. But his dad didn't believe him. *(to deceive)*
   – Oh, he is shrewd and ...
4. – Jack is worried sick. He has lost some very important papers this week. *(to know)*
   – No wonder. ... whether he will find them or not.

5. – She is totally unpredictable. You never know how she will behave. *(to tell)*
   – Yes, ... what she will do next.
6. – Ann is an impossible chatterbox. *(to stop)*
   – Oh, yes. She can chat all evening and ... her.
7. – What's up with Victoria? She looks gloomy. *(to account)*
   – ... for her moods. She is as changeable as the weather.
8. – The Greens invited us to the party but we don't feel like going there. *(to avoid)*
   – I'm afraid ... it. They may take offence.
9. – I'm sorry, I can't give you a hand. *(to get)*
   – That's all right. Then I'll manage it by myself. ... away from it.

14

Read the English sentences.
Point out the gerundial construction used as subject.
Choose the corresponding Russian sentence.

1. ***His mother's finding fault with everything never irritated him.***
   a) Его мать ко всему придиралась, а он не раздражался.
   b) Придирки его матери ко всему никогда его не раздражали.
   c) То, что мать ко всему придиралась, никогда его не раздражало.

2. ***It's no good all this idolising film- and pop-stars.***
   a) Ни к чему все это чрезмерное восхищение кино- и поп-звездами.
   b) Нехорошо чрезмерно восхищаться кино- и поп-звездами.
   c) Кино- и поп-звезды ко всему относятся с чрезмерным восхищением, и это нехорошо.

3. ***It makes all the difference your father's having warned you.***
   a) Предупреждение твоего отца совершенно меняет дело.
   b) То, что твой отец предупредил тебя, совершенно меняет дело.
   c) То, что твоего отца и тебя предупредили, совершенно меняет дело.

4. ***Your children watching horror films can't but worry you.***
   a) Ваше беспокойство может быть вызвано тем, что ваши дети смотрят фильмы ужасов.
   b) Ваши дети смотрят фильмы ужасов, и это не может вас не беспокоить.
   c) То, что ваши дети смотрят фильмы ужасов, не может вас не беспокоить.

5. ***Their being given a warm welcome by his parents was much spoken of.***
   a) То, что его родители тепло их принимали, вызывало много разговоров.
   b) Было много разговоров из-за того, что они тепло приняли его родителей.
   c) Об их теплом приеме много говорили его родители.

15

Translate the sentences into English using a gerund or a gerundial phrase as subject.
Underline the notional subject in the sentences with the introductory subject *It* and *There*.

1. Работать на открытом воздухе полезно.
2. Коллекционирование древних монет было его увлечением.
3. Поездка к морю была необходима всей семье.

4. Покупка новой машины требует больших денег.
5. Невозможно убедить его не делать этого.
6. Бесполезно просить ее принять экзамен.
7. Переписка с англичанами *(to have an English pen-friend)* помогает совершенствовать язык.
8. Разговор с ними ничего не изменит.
9. Его не заставишь ходить туда.
10. Нельзя отрицать, что он прав.
11. Получение денег очень помогло бы.
12. Развлекать гостей довольно сложно.
13. Просвещать людей необходимо.
14. Нет смысла спорить с ним.
15. Финансирование этого проекта чрезвычайно важно.
16. Производство электротоваров требовало крупных вложений.
17. Невозможно избежать встречи с ним.
18. Воспитание детей – сложный процесс.
19. Выбор профессии – непростое дело.
20. Было интересно наблюдать за игрой в футбол.
21. Невозможно было в тот вечер попасть в цирк.

Success is ***getting* what you want**.
Happiness is ***liking* what you get**.

Author Unidentified

Real generosity is ***doing* something nice for someone who'll never find it out**.

F. A. Clark

2. THE PREDICATIVE

When the gerund is used as part of a compound nominal predicate it functions as ***a predicative***.

The worst part was *knowing you would be worried*.
Самое ужасное было сознавать, что ты будешь волноваться.

But this seems *like*[1] *going to a friend for a reference*.
Это вроде как пойти к другу за рекомендацией.

Eighty percent of success is *showing up in the right place at the right moment*.*
Восемьдесят процентов успеха заключается в том, чтобы оказаться в нужный момент в нужном месте./
Успех во многом зависит от того, ...

The difficulty was *getting a visa*.
Сложность заключалась в том, чтобы получить визу.

[1]like — зд. предлог — как (что-либо/кто-либо).

PEOPLE SAY

The truth of the matter is that you always know the right thing to do. The hard part is ***doing* it**.

Gen. H. Norman Schwartzkopf

❖ ❖ ❖

Balancing the budget is **like *going* to heaven**. Everybody wants to do it, but nobody wants to do what you have to do to get there.

Ph. Gramm

KEEP SMILING

TRIAL OF PATIENCE

The greatest trial of patience is ***hearing* a stammering barrister examining a stuttering witness in the presence of a judge hard of hearing**.

❖ ❖ ❖

SERGEANT'S ENGLISH

To a recruit the first days of Army Service were **like *learning* at a language school**. The thing was that Army sergeants spoke their own English.

The sergeant barked his orders but the recruit remained motionless. Then his friend – an old-timer – intervened. He said, "If you expect to groove, stop rappin' and turn on![1] Don't you understand English?"

[1] *прост.* Если хотите, чтобы все было нормально, кончайте трепаться и подключайтесь.

III.2. EXERCISES

1

Point out the gerund or the gerundial phrase used as predicative.
Write out the nouns used as subjects in this case.
Translate the sentences into Russian.

MODEL

His duty was ***cleaning* the flat**.
Его обязанностью было ***убирать*** квартиру.

The gerundial phrase ***cleaning* the flat** is used as predicative.
The subject is expressed by the noun *duty*.

1. Walter's hobby is travelling.
2. His business was building summer cottages.
3. The only way out was parting with him.
4. The next thing to do is mixing the flour and the butter.
5. Most interesting hobbies are making things and learning things.
6. The best way will be visiting them every week.
7. His idea was being employed as soon as possible.
8. The next step will be painting and decorating the flat.
9. The most difficult thing was assembling the set.
10. His principle was paying the rent on time.
11. Her first thought was interviewing the man.
12. The most important thing is trying to talk him out of it.
13. The worst thing for her was being sent away from her family.

2 **Complete the sentences using a gerund or a gerundial phrase as predicative.**

MODEL

The problem was ...
The problem was ***helping*** **them regularly**.

1. The question is ...
2. My goal is ...
3. His brother's hobby was ...
4. Her next step will be ...
5. Tom's idea is ...
6. The teacher's task is ...
7. A parent's duty should be ...
8. Every student's dream is ...
9. His idea was ...
10. The first thing to do will be ...

3 **Read the English sentences.**
Point out the gerundial construction used as predicative.
Choose the corresponding Russian sentence.

1. ***It's like children trying to deceive their parents.***
   a) Это похоже на детскую попытку обмануть родителей.
   b) Это как дети, которые пытаются обмануть своих родителей.
   c) Это похоже на то, как дети пытаются обмануть своих родителей.

2. ***The next step was Mr. Brick and Mrs. Click accepting our terms.***
   a) Следующий шаг состоял в том, чтобы мистер Брик и миссис Клик приняли наши условия.
   b) Следующим был мистер Брик, а миссис Клик приняла наши условия.
   c) Следующими были мистер Брик и миссис Клик, принимающие наши условия.

3. ***The only chance was Harry imploring her to come.***
   a) Единственный шанс состоял в том, чтобы Гарри умолил ее придти.
   b) Единственным шансом был Гарри, умоляюший ее придти.
   c) Единственным шансом для Гарри было умолить ее придти.

4. ***Our disappointment was the boy and his younger sister not having been taken to the doctor.***
   a) Мы были разочарованы тем, что мальчик и его младшая сестра не сходили к врачу.
   b) Мы были разочарованы в мальчике, так как он не отвел свою младшую сестру к врачу.
   c) Мы были разочарованы тем, что мальчика и его младшую сестру не отвели к врачу.

Translate the sentences into English using a gerund or a gerundial phrase as predicative.

1. Её обязанностью было производить все необходимые расчеты.
2. Следуюший шаг состоит в том, чтобы попытаться убедить его приехать.
3. Единственная задача – регулярно проверять работу двигателя.
4. Его хобби – коллекционировать пейзажи.
5. Главным для нас было читать как можно больше книг в оригинале.
6. Единственный выход – ежедневно навещать её.
7. Первая задача состояла в том, чтобы зарегестрировать всех участников.
8. Мечтой Патрика было зарабатывать на жизнь и помогать матери.
9. Главное – вовремя выплачивать зарплату.
10. Моё предложение состояло в том, чтобы регулярно обеспечивать их продуктами.
11. Худший вариант – давать им взаймы и не получать деньги обратно.

We have not passed subtle line between childhood and adulthood until we move from the passive voice to the active voice – that is, until we have stopped ***saying*** "It got lost," and say, "I lost it."

S. J. Harris

3. PART OF A COMPOUND VERBAL PREDICATE

As in this function the gerund forms part of the predicate, all the other words modifying the gerund refer to the whole predicate, thus it is only ***a single gerund*** that can be looked upon as part of the compound verbal phasal predicate.

In this function the gerund manifests its verbal character and combines with different *phasal* verbs together with which it forms *a compound verbal phasal predicate*.

The phasal verbs denote the following phases of the action expressed by the gerund: 1. the *beginning*, 2. the *continuation* and 3. the *end* of the action.

The gerund in this predicate denotes the action itself.

1) **The beginning of the action**
(to begin, to burst out, to start, etc.*)*

She **began** *reading* the novel yesterday.

Start *doing* the exercise now.

The girl **burst out** *crying*.
Девочка расплакалась.

NOTE:

The gerund in this function can't be used and only the infinitive is possible

1) when the finite verb is used in the *continuous* form

We *are beginning to discuss* the next item.
Мы начинаем обсуждать следующий вопрос.

It *is beginning to drizzle*.
Начинает моросить.

2) when the subject denotes *a thing*, not a living being

The clock *began to strike*.
Часы начали бить.

The water *began to boil*.
Вода закипела.

3) with the verbs *to understand* and *to see* (in the meaning of *to understand*)

I began *to understand* the situation.
Я начал понимать ситуацию.

2) **The continuation of the action**
(*to continue, to go on, to keep <on>*)

The doctor **continued** *examining* the patient.
Врач продолжал осматривать больного.

She **went *on*** *dialling* Richard's telephone number.
Она продолжала набирать номер телефона Ричарда.

Eveline **kept** *moving* her lips in silent prayer.
Эвелин продолжала шевелить губами в безмолвной молитве.

PEOPLE SAY

Champions *keep **playing*** until they get it right.*

Billie Jean King

❖ ❖ ❖

Half of the world is composed of people who have something to say and can't and the other half who have nothing to say and *keep on **saying***.

R. Frost

3) **The end of the action**
(to cease, to finish, to give up, to leave off, to stop, etc.*)*

When *did* you **give up** *smoking*?
Когда ты бросил курить?

It *has* already **stopped** *raining*.
Дождь уже перестал.

We left before the band **ceased** *playing*.
Мы ушли до того, как оркестр перестал играть.

Have you **finished** *cooking?*
Ты закончила готовить?

NOTE:

Note the difference in the meaning of ***stop + a gerund*** and ***stop + an infinitive***.

stop + a gerund	**stop + an infinitive**
= *to end* an action, to finish doing something The gerund in this case is part of a compound verbal phasal predicate	= to stop *so that* you can do something The infinitive in this case is an adverbial modifier of purpose

All was clear. They *stopped* ***asking*** **the prisoner questions**. Все было ясно. Они прекратили допрос заключенного.	On the way home I *stopped* ***to buy*** **some food**. По дороге домой я остановился, чтобы купить еды.

There is also some difference in the meaning of **go on + a gerund** and **go on + an infinitive**, though it doesn't tell on the syntactical function of the whole.

go on + a gerund	**go on + an infinitive**
= to continue doing	= to do something different, to do the next thing
Though it was already dark, we *went on* ***digging***. Хоть было уже темно, мы продолжали копать.	We took out the weeds and *went on* ***to plant*** **the flowers**. Мы вырвали сорняки и стали сажать цветы.

PEOPLE SAY

If they *stop* ***telling*** lies about us, we will *stop* ***telling*** the truth about them.

Author Unidentified

KEEP SMILING

NO USE TRYING

UNCLE JAMES: Well, Bobby, have you gained any prizes at school?

BOBBY: No, sir, the other fellows have got them all.

UNCLE JAMES: But you'll *keep on* ***trying***, my boy, won't you?

BOBBY: What's the use of trying when the other fellows *keep on* ***doing*** the same!

KEEP SMILING

WHY DOES IT RAIN?

LITTLE BOY: Mummy, why does it rain?
MOTHER: When it rains things *start* ***growing***. Apples, pears, flowers.
LITTLE BOY: Then why does it rain on the pavement?

❖ ❖ ❖

SOUND BARRIER

Loud explosions rocked periodically some parts of the town, and an indignant lady telephoned the police headquarters to find out what had happened.

She got the explanation that perhaps a jet plane had broken the sound barrier.

"If that barrier *keeps* ***getting*** in everybody's way," she said angrily, "why don't they take that thing down?"

❖ ❖ ❖

A ranger outfit was having training in mountain climbing. One of the men slopped and *began* ***falling*** onto a precipice.

"Are you hurt?" asked another.

"I don't know yet," a weak voice was heard, "am still falling!"

❖ ❖ ❖

HOW MUCH DOES INK COST?

BOY: Is ink so very expensive, Father?
FATHER: Why, no, what makes you think so?
BOY: Well, Mother *burst out* ***crying*** when I spilt some ink on the carpet.

III.3. EXERCISES

1

Point out the gerund used as part of a compound verbal phasal predicate.
Translate the sentences into Russian.

MODEL

He *started* ***arguing*** with his wife.
Он стал ***спорить*** с женой.

1. The detective started questioning her about the car accident.
2. They kept on talking about this and that.
3. At last he gave up taking drugs.
4. The children burst out crying.
5. The student went on writing the test.
6. We ceased working at the project.
7. Dan began translating the poem.
8. Jane stopped doing her morning exercises.
9. They continued laughing at him.
10. Andy kept on moaning.
11. She went on playing the violin.
12. Pat finished washing the baby.
13. We left off reading the text at page five.
14. Joe started eating the steak.

2

Complete the sentences using the gerund as part of a compound verbal phasal predicate.
Make use of the suggested infinitive phrases.

MODEL

She started ... *(to learn English).*
She started ***learning*** English.

1. Mary continued ... *(to practise her French in Paris).*
2. The song was so amusing that she burst out ... *(to laugh).*
3. They have just started ... *(to learn German).*
4. The child stopped ... *(to cry at once).*
5. The factory ceased ... *(to produce electrical goods).*
6. The scientist began ... *(to decipher a medieval manuscript).*
7. We have already finished ... *(to read "The Man of Property").*
8. They kept on ... *(to walk for a while in silence).*
9. His wife started ... and gave up ... *(to slim; to eat bread).*
10. I can't remember where we left off ... *(to copy out the text).*
11. Brian gave up ... *(to play the chello).*

3

Insert an infinitive or a gerund used as part of a compound verbal phasal predicate.
Sum up the difference in the use of the gerund and the infinitive.

MODEL 1

He began ***playing*** tennis when a boy.
When Andy left she began ***to play*** the piano.

MODEL 2

It's **beginning** ***to snow***.

MODEL 3

She **began** ***to see*** how to do it.

см. стр. 91

MODEL 4

They **stopped *talking***.

MODEL 5

They **stopped *to talk*** to her.

MODEL 6

He **went on *speaking*** about it.

1. She started *(swim)* when she was five.
2. My friends are beginning *(make)* a film.
3. Jim stopped *(phone)* the receptionist.
4. He continued *(drink)* strong drinks.
5. She got up and started *(recite)* a poem.
6. Look! It's beginning *(rain)*.
7. Stop *(make)* such noise.
8. The actors began *(rehearse)* the scene.
9. The boy went on *(explain)* the problem.
10. We began *(understand)* each other.
11. She stopped *(look)* into his eyes.
12. The alarm-clock began *(ring)*.
13. We continued *(read)* his novels while we were second-year students.
14. When her husband came she continued *(watch)* TV.
15. His father began *(understand)* that he was lying.
16. The children couldn't stop *(laugh)*.

4

Translate the sentences into English using the gerund as part of a compound verbal phasal predicate.

1. Мы перестали писать им после войны.
2. Они продолжали ссориться.
3. Больной бросил принимать лекарство.
4. Она начала регулярно делать зарядку.
5. Я продолжала ходить в бассейн.

6. Начни ежедневно есть овощи и фрукты.
7. Он прекратил обсуждать эту тему.
8. Мебельная фабрика перестала выпускать круглые столы.
9. Я рассмеялся и перестал задавать ему вопросы.
10. Мы продолжали вести светский разговор *(to make small talk)*.
11. Прежде чем ты начнешь спорить со мной, подумай.
12. Перестань терять попусту время.
13. Он начал играть в шахматы, когда ему было семь лет.
14. Продолжайте исследовать эту проблему.
15. Он решил бросить курить, когда стал понимать, что это действительно вредно.

A rotten case abides **no *handling***.*

W. Shakespeare,
King Henry IV,
Act IV, Sc. 1

Between two evils 'tis not worth ***choosing***.*

English proverb

4. a) THE DIRECT OBJECT

As the direct object the gerund follows transitive verbs some of which may be also followed by an infinitive.[1]

As the direct object the gerund may also follow the adjective ***worth*** after which the *active* gerund has *passive* meaning.

The book is not **worth** *reading.*
Эту книгу не стоит читать.

Life seemed **worth** *fighting for.*
Казалось, за жизнь стоит бороться.

PEOPLE SAY

Whatever is *worth* ***doing*** **at all** is *worth* ***doing*** **well**.

Lord Chesterfield

❖ ❖ ❖

It is better to risk ***saving*** **a guilty person** than to condemn an innocent one.

Author Unidentified

[1]See pp. 97 – 101.

PEOPLE SAY

It's a long way that has no ***turning***.*

English proverb

Here is a list of transitive verbs and modal phrases with transitive verbs followed by a gerund-direct object:

admit	допускать
appreciate	ценить, быть благодарным
avoid	избегать
consider	обдумывать, полагать, считать
contemplate	обдумывать, рассматривать, предполагать
delay	отложить, отсрочить
deny	отрицать
detest	ненавидеть, питать отвращение
dislike	не любить
enjoy	наслаждаться, получать удовольствие
escape	избавиться, отделаться
excuse	извинять, прощать
fancy	полагать, предполагать, нравиться
forgive	простить
imagine	вообразить

involve	вовлекать, затрагивать
justify	оправдывать, извинять
mention	упоминать
mind	возражать, иметь что-либо против *(in negative and interrogative sentences)*
miss	пропустить, не заметить
postpone	отложить
practise	заниматься чем-то
put off	откладывать
recollect	вспоминать
resent	негодовать
resist	сопротивляться, противиться, противостоять
risk	рискнуть, рисковать
suggest	предлагать
understand	понимать
can't face[1]	не могу выдержать
can't help[1]	не могу не
can't stand[1]	терпеть не могу, не выношу

[1]Модальные выражения, в составе которых переходные глаголы.

Raymond **didn't like** *being called Ray.*
Реймонд не любил, когда его называли Рей.

Imagine *being woken in the middle of the night.*
Представь себе, что тебя разбудили посреди ночи.

I couldn't **resist** *saying something.*
Я не мог удержаться, чтобы не сказать что-нибудь.

I won't **risk** *losing my license.*
Я не хочу рисковать и терять водительские права.

She **couldn't help** *crying.*
Она не могла удержаться от слез. (...не могла не плакать)

He **can't stand** *being criticized.*
Он не выносит, когда его критикуют.

I **can't face** *waiting here in the cold.*
Я не в состоянии ждать здесь на холоде.

If there's anything you **fancy** *doing*, Shirley, just say so.
Если есть что-то, что тебе хотелось бы делать, Шерли, ты только скажи.

We decided **to delay** *going on our holiday until next month.*
Мы решили отложить поездку и поехать отдыхать в следующем месяце.

He **is contemplating** *going to London next week.*
Он подумывает поехать в Лондон на следующей неделе.

We narrowly **escaped** *being drowned.*
Мы едва не утонули.

He **resents** *being called a fool.*
Он злится, когда его называют дураком.

The gerundial constructions form *a complex object* as they consist of two parts which are in predicate relation.

Excuse *my interrupting* *you.*
Извините, что прерываю вас.

You **mentioned *his having been*** *in hospital last year.*
Вы упомянули, что в прошлом году он был в больнице.

Would you **mind *my opening*** *the window*?
Вы не возражаете, если я открою окно?

They **detest *all that shooting and killing*.**
Они ненавидят всю эту стрельбу и убийства.

PEOPLE SAY

It is impossible to enjoy ***idling*** **thoroughly** unless one has plenty of work to do.

J. K. Jerome,
Idle Thoughts of an Idle Fellow

NOTE:

Some verbs can be followed by either a gerund or an infinitive, usually with a difference in meaning. The most *important* cases are:

advise, allow, attempt, can't bear, forbid, forget, hate, hear, intend, like, love, permit, prefer, propose, regret, remember.

With ***remember, forget*** and ***regret***, the difference is connected with time. *The gerund* refers to things that happen earlier (**before** the remembering, forgetting, or regretting took place); *the infinitive* refers to things that happen **after** the remembering, etc.

remember + a gerund	**remember + an infinitive**
= remember what one **has done**, or what **has happened**	= remember what one **has to do**
I *remember* ***seeing*** **you once**. Я помню, что видел вас однажды.	Please, *remember* ***to close*** **the windows before you go out**. Пожалуйста, не забудьте закрыть окна перед уходом.
forget + a gerund	**forget + an infinitive**
= forget what one **has done**, or what **has happened**	= forget what one **has to do**
I'*ll* never *forget* ***answering*** **at my entrance examination**. Я никогда не забуду, как отвечал на вступительном экзамене.	He won't forget ***to send*** **the fax**. Он не забудет послать факс.

regret + a gerund	**regret + an infinitive**
= be sorry for what **has happened**	= be sorry for what one **is going to say**
We *regretted* ***coming*** **to the party**. Мы пожалели, что пришли на вечеринку.	We *regret* ***to tell*** **you that the situation is deteriorating**. Мы с сожалением сообщаем вам, что ситуация ухудшается.
like + a gerund	**like + an infinitive**
= enjoy	= choose to..., think it right to...
I *don't like* ***swimming***. Я не люблю плавать. Her father *didn't like* ***being given*** **such orders**. Ее отцу не нравилось, когда ему давали такие указания. (*The infinitive* is also possible, especially in American English.)	I *didn't like* ***to speak*** **on the subject**, so I cancelled the interview. Я не хотела разговаривать об этом, поэтому отменила встречу.
———————	**would like, would love, would prefer, would hate + an infinitive**
	I'*d love* ***to ask*** **you a question**. Я бы хотел задать тебе вопрос. *Would you like* ***to see*** **the doctor at once or** *would you prefer* ***to wait***? Вы бы хотели сразу попасть к врачу или предпочитаете подождать? I'*d hate* ***to live in*** **a big city**. Ни за что не хотел бы жить в большом городе.

allow, advise, forbid, permit + a gerund is used when there is *no personal object*	**allow, advise, forbid, permit + an infinitive** is used *with a personal object* when we say who is allowed, advised, etc.
We *don't allow (permit)* ***smoking*** **in this restaurant**. В ресторане курить не разрешается.	We *don't allow (permit)* **visitors** ***to smoke*** **in the restaurant**. В ресторане посетителям курить не разрешается.
With the verbs **love, hate, prefer** there is not much difference between the two structures.	
I *love* ***swimming*** in the sea. = I *love* ***to swim*** in the sea. Я люблю купаться в море. Some people *hate* ***getting up*** in the early morning. = Some people *hate* ***to get up*** in the early morning. Некоторые терпеть не могут рано вставать. Personally, I *prefer* ***walking*** as much as possible every day. = Personally, I *prefer* ***to walk*** as much as possible every day. Лично я предпочитаю ходить пешком как можно больше ежедневно.	
However, if we are referring *to one particular occasion*, it is more common to use *the infinitive* and ***the gerund*** is more appropriate to ***a general statement***.	
I hate **hurting** other people's feelings. Я терпеть не могу (ненавижу) обижать людей.	I hate ***to mention*** it, but you are standing on my foot. Мне неприятно об этом говорить, но вы стоите на моей ноге.

try + a gerund	**try + an infinitive**
= to test (by making an experiment), do something which might solve the problem	= to attempt an action, to make an effort
Why don't you *try* ***ringing*** **Enquiries**? They might have the number. Почему бы тебе не попробовать позвонить в справочное? У них может быть этот номер.	I'*m trying* **to find** Nick's phone number. Я пытаюсь найти телефон Ника.
mean + a gerund	**mean + an infinitive**
= to make another action necessary *(it means...)*	= to intend an action, do it *deliberately*
I'm applying for a visa. It *means* ***filling*** **in this form**. Я хочу получить визу. Значит, должен заполнить этот бланк.	I *meant* ***to meet*** **him**, it wasn't by chance. Я намеревался встретить его. Это не было случайно.
need + a gerund	**need + an infinitive**
= needs to be done	= have to do
The grass *needs* ***cutting***. It has grown too long. (The grass needs to be cut.) Траву надо скосить. Она очень высокая.	Alan *needs* ***to get*** **early tomorrow**. He is flying abroad. Алан должен завтра встать рано. Он улетает заграницу.

Some verbs and phrases take either only a to-infinitive or only a gerund:

+ *to* infinitive			+ gerund	
agree	happen	seem	admit	imagine
aim	hesitate	swear	appreciate	involve
appear	hope	tend	avoid	justify
arrange	long	threaten	can't face	mention
ask	learn	train	can't help	mind
attempt	manage	turn out	can't stand	miss
beg	neglect	undertake	confess	postpone
can't afford	offer	want	consider	practise
can't wait	omit	wish	delay	put off
choose	plan		deny	resent
claim	prepare		detest	resist
decide	pretend		dislike	risk
demand	promise		enjoy	save
expect	prove		escape	suggest
fail	refuse		excuse	tolerate
guarantee	seek		fancy	

If the verb takes *a direct object and an objective predicative*[1] expressed by such adjectives as *awful, exciting, interesting, pleasant, unlikely, etc.*, the gerund-object (usually expressed by a gerundial phrase or construction) is preceded by *a formal introductory object* ***it***. The most common verbs in this case are ***to find, to think, to consider***.

I find *it* **awful** *your being so late*.
Я считаю, что то, что ты так опоздал, ужасно.

[1]An objective predicative is the part of the sentence which characterizes the object and usually stands between the formal object *it* and the notional object.

As in the above example: **awful** is an objective predicative and it characterizes the object *Your being so late*.

I think *it* **exciting** *our taking part in the performance.*
Наше участие в спектакле волнует меня.
(Думаю, нам интересно принять участие в спектакле.)

I consider *it* **unlikely** *George coming here at all.*
Я думаю, вряд ли Джордж вообще сюда придет.

I found *it* **pleasant** *you being there.*
Мне было приятно, что вы были там.

KEEP SMILING

FATHER: This is the sunset my daughter painted. She studied ***painting*** abroad, you know.
FRIEND: Ah, that accounts for it. I never saw a sunset like that in this country.

❖ ❖ ❖

A DESERVING PATIENT

If Doctor Brown is fond of administering a great number of remedies, Smith, his patient, is no less fond ***of taking*** **them**. One day, seeing a long row of bottles and pill-boxes standing empty and in order on the table of his patient, Doctor Brown exclaims: "My dear friend, it is a privilege to treat you. I can't help ***admiring*** **the way you follow your doctor's advice**. You certainly deserve to be ill."

KEEP SMILING

The much preoccupied professor walked into the barber's shop and sat in a chair next to a woman who was having her hair bobbed.

"Haircut, please," ordered the professor.

"Certainly," said the barber. "But if you really want a haircut would you mind ***taking off*** **your hat first**?"

The customer hurriedly removed his hat.

"I'm sorry," he apologized as he looked around. "I didn't know there was a lady present."

❖ ❖ ❖

FRIENDLY ADVICE

GRANDFATHER: Excuse **my *interfering***, dear daughter, but something must be done with that favourite son of yours. Such a foolish and arrogant young man!

MOTHER: Don't be so strict, dear father. Boys will be boys. But certainly something must be done. I insist on his going abroad to see the world.

❖ ❖ ❖

HIGH PRECISION JUMPING

An ex-serviceman entered the office of the circus manager:

"Sir, I was a paratrooper in the Air Force. Now I have worked out a staggering number for your show."

"What is it?"

"I suggest ***jumping*** **without any chute from the circus cupola into a beer bottle in the centre of the ring**."

The manager was impressed, "Well, well, it sounds attractive. But tell me about the secret of the trick."

"The secret of the trick is that the bottle should have a funnel," explained the man.

III.4. EXERCISES

1

Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction. Underline it with a double line.
Define its syntactical function.
Underline the verb or other parts of speech the gerund refers to with a single line.
Translate the sentences into Russian.

MODEL

Esther *couldn't help* ***being*** **optimistic**.

The gerundial phrase ***being*** **optimistic** is used in the function of a direct object. It refers to the predicate expressed by the verbs *couldn't help*.

Эстер не могла не ***быть оптимистичной***.

1. I don't need reminding of that.
2. He won't risk losing his licence.
3. He considered *(обдумывать)* pulling the phone cord straight out of the plug.
4. I know she might fancy retiring to Cornwall.
5. Their being together didn't bear thinking of.
6. You don't mind Caroline working on the papers alone?
7. No one likes being made to look like a fool.
8. He barely avoided receiving them when he was alone.
9. I couldn't resist saying something.
10. Jane actually likes cleaning.
11. Can you imagine George cooking the dinner?
12. There were a number of cuts that needed stitching.
13. I can't understand you being angry.
14. Would you mind going away now?
15. I loved reading about all those gods and goddesses when I was young.

16. She hated being nagged about her smoking.
17. He remembered looking down at her lifeless body.
18. She didn't really appreciate being treated like a stranger.
19. He looked so funny that Julia couldn't help laughing.
20. We all enjoyed listening to music that night.

2 **Paraphrase the following sentences. Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase.**

MODEL 1

He attempts to talk with her. →
He attempts ***talking*** **with her**.

1. She hates to stay up late.
2. Do you like to walk?
3. They dislike to quarrel.
4. I prefer to use different dictionaries.
5. I hate to be interrupted.
6. I can't stand to be asked silly questions.
7. We like to dance.
8. They attempt to attend all classes.
9. He can't stand to be addressed by strangers.
10. I hate to tell you such sad things.

MODEL 2

1. Do/Will you agree to write her a note? →
   Do/Will you mind ***writing*** **her a note**?
2. I agree to visit him today. →
   I don't mind ***visiting*** **him today**.

1. I agree to put an end to our quarrel.
2. Do you agree to open the window?
3. I agreed to look after the child.
4. Will you agree to reserve a seat for me?
5. Do you agree to take your little brother with you?
6. She agrees to go for a walk alone.
7. Do you agree to call on him?

8. Mike agrees to tell me all he knows.
9. Do you agree to have him to lunch?
10. Mable agreed to take care of my brother.

MODEL 3

The film is interesting. *(to see)* →
The film is *worth* ***seeing***.

The film is boring. *(not to see)* →
The film isn't *worth* ***seeing***.
Note the passive meaning of the gerund.

1. The story is exciting. *(to read)*
2. The book is amusing. *(to read)*
3. The music is beautiful. *(to listen to)*
4. The dress is becoming. *(to buy)*
5. The coat is too expensive. *(not to buy)*
6. This rock group is fantastic. *(to listen to)*
7. The blouse is charming. *(to buy)*
8. The shirt isn't all cotton. *(not to buy)*
9. The T.V. set is too small. *(not to buy)*
10. This tie is all the fashion. *(to wear)*

MODEL 4

The shirt is dirty. *(to wash)* →
It *needs/wants* ***washing***.
Note the passive meaning of the gerund.

1. The car is all splashed with mud. *(to clean)*
2. Your hair has gone white in some parts. *(to dye)*
3. The button has gone off. *(to sew on)*
4. There is a hole in the sole *(подошва)* of my boot. *(to repair)*
5. The heel of my shoe is going off. *(to glue on)*
6. Your trousers are all crumpled. *(to press)*
7. The dress is too long. *(to shorten)*
8. The bicycle is out of order. *(to fix)*
9. The telephone has gone dead. *(to repair)*
10. Your shirt is dirty. *(to wash)*
11. Your hair is too long. *(to trim)*

3

Respond to the following.
Use: ***I don't like***
I hate } ***+ a gerund***
I can't stand

MODEL

— Jane likes to go to her job by tube.
— But I *hate* ***going*** **by tube**.

1. My cousin likes to have lunch at McDonald's.
2. Ann's son-in-law enjoys drinking Coca Cola.
3. Her husband smokes cigarettes.
4. Mum likes to cook fish.
5. We often write dictations.
6. They like to read detective stories.
7. My friend stays up very late at night.
8. Charles often quarrels with his wife.
9. Jane's sister is fond of writing letters.
10. Some students enjoy taking exams.
11. George likes to drive slowly.
12. We enjoy riding a bicycle.
13. Nell is fond of reading sentimental novels.
14. I enjoy listening to pop music.

4

Answer the following questions.
Use either *enjoy + a gerund* or *hate + a gerund*.

MODEL

— Do you like listening to pop music?
— Yes, I *enjoy* ***listening*** **to it**.

— Do you like playing cards?
— No, I *hate* ***playing*** **cards**.

см. стр. 109

1. Do you like reading Dickens?
2. Do you like giving presents?
3. Do you like cooking?
4. Do you like writing letters?
5. Do you like arguing with your friends?
6. Do you like playing volleyball?
7. Do you like travelling?
8. Do you like travelling by air?
9. Do you like travelling by sea?
10. Do you like studying languages?
11. Do you like living in a big city?
12. Do you like living in the country?
13. Do you like taking exams?
14. Do you like shopping?

5 **Change the verb *may* for *would you mind* + *a gerundial construction*.**

MODEL

May I take your book? →
Would you mind **my *taking* your book**?

1. May I come to your party?
2. May I see your game?
3. May I use your phone?
4. May I use your pen?
5. May I open the window?
6. May I turn on the gas?
7. May I switch on the light?
8. May I take your calendar?
9. May I watch TV with you?
10. May I go for a walk with your family?
11. May I borrow your text-book?

6 **Change the verbal phrase *would rather + an infinitive* into *prefer + a gerund.***

MODEL

Would you rather come earlier? →
Do you *prefer* ***coming*** **earlier**?

Would you rather not stay longer? →
Would you *prefer* **not *staying* longer**?

1. Would your rather travel by air?
2. Would you rather not travel by sea?
3. Would you rather listen to the new pop group?
4. Would you rather stay at the hotel than with us?
5. Would you rather drink dry wine?
6. Would you rather have the steak raw or well done?
7. Would you rather speak English with your friends?
8. Would you rather not smoke at all?
9. Would you rather work outside?
10. Would you rather stay indoors in bad weather?
11. Would you rather waste your time on chattering than reading books?
12. Would you rather play chess than argue with your friends?

7 **Change the verb *to like* into *to hate/can't stand.* Make all the other necessary changes. Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase.**

MODEL

I don't like to write letters. → I *hate* ***writing*** **letters**.
I *can't stand* ***writing*** **letters**.

см. стр. 111

1. I don't like to go to bed early.
2. I don't like to walk in the wood at night.
3. We don't like to wait.
4. He doesn't like to stay up late.
5. I don't like my daughter to come home late.
6. I don't like people to tell lies.
7. He doesn't like to borrow money.
8. My daughter doesn't like to take examinations.
9. I don't like to eat boiled carrots.
10. My friend doesn't like to go to the theatre alone.
11. Mike doesn't like to listen to rock music.
12. Bill doesn't like to drink hot milk.

8

Respond to the following.
Use *I can't help + a gerund/a gerundial phrase*.

MODEL

– Stop smiling.	– Tell her to stop smiling.
– I *can't help* ***smiling***.	– She *can't help* ***smiling***.

1. Stop fidgeting *(to fidget – ерзать)*.
2. Don't cry.
3. Don't laugh.
4. Don't eat so much.
5. Give up smoking.
6. Why don't you stop talking?
7. Why don't you stay at home? Don't go out tonight.
8. Tell him not to drink any more wine.
9. Why don't you ask her not to turn back every other moment?
10. Tell her not to look into her neighbour's notebook.

9

Speak about yourself/your friend/your relatives/your boss/your teacher/your coach, etc.
Characterise them by answering the following questions.

MODEL

What don't you mind doing?
I *don't mind* ***working*** **late hours**.

A
1. What don't you (he, she) mind doing?
2. What can't you (he, she) help doing?
3. What do you (he, she) enjoy doing?
4. What do you (he, she) avoid doing?
5. What do you (he, she) consider doing?
6. What do you (he, she) always practice doing?
7. What do you (he, she) generally put off doing?
8. What do you (he, she) sometimes imagine doing?
9. What do you (he, she) sometimes miss doing?
10. What do you (he, she) recollect doing from time to time?

B What can't you (he, she) stand?
What do you (does he, she) enjoy those people doing?

Use:

your little sister/brother	your fellow-students
your mother/father	your boy/girl friend
your teacher/coach	teenagers .
your friends	elderly people.

10

Answer the following questions.
Use the suggested verbs and an active gerund.

MODEL

— What do your socks need doing? *(to wash)*
— They *need* ***washing***.

1. What do your finger nails need doing? *(to polish)*
2. What does your hair want doing? *(to trim)*
3. What does your waste-paper basket need doing? *(to empty)*
4. What does the floor need doing? *(to scrub)*
5. What do the flowers want doing? *(to water)*

6. What do the rose bushes want doing? *(to trim)*
7. What do the windows want doing in spring? *(to wash)*
8. What does the car need doing? *(to clean)*
9. What do the books on the shelf need doing? *(to dust)*
10. What does the ash-tray want doing? *(to empty)*
11. What do his trousers want doing? *(to press)*
12. What does his shirt need doing? *(to iron)*

11 **Say what the following types of people *may hate/enjoy/can't stand/avoid/appreciate/detest doing* or what they *don't mind doing* under certain circumstances:**

MODEL

Chefs *enjoy* ***cooking*** **something tasty**, but they *can't stand* ***being interfered*** **with**, though sometimes they *don't mind* ***being given*** **some help**, they *like* ***having*** **a free hand in doing something extraordinary**, but they usually *avoid* ***doing*** **dull, routine work**.

hotel keepers	housewives	mothers-in-law	customs officers
chefs	managers	secretaries	drivers.
cleaners	postmen	teenagers	

12 **Compare two different activities.**
Say what you prefer and why.

MODEL

Many people prefer ***staying*** **at home** to ***going out*** **on a frosty day**, but I prefer ***skiing*** **in the country** to ***watching*** **TV** because I like ***having*** **some exercise**.

Suggested verbs:

to go to bed early, to stay up late
to walk, to go by the tube
to eat at home, to eat out

см. стр. 114

to sleep all day long on Sunday, to go out with friends
to read a novel, to see it screened
to live in the country, to live in town, etc.

13

Imagine you are leaving home for a few months.
The day before you leave your mother gives you some advice about what to do and what not to do while you are away.
Make up sentences to express warnings and advice using the gerund.
Use the model and the list of verbs to form a gerund.

MODEL 1

MOTHER: Make sure you *avoid* ***going*** **home alone.**

MODEL 2

MOTHER: *Don't forget* ***taking*** **your new shoes with you.**

Suggested variants:

Avoid: to lie to people
to catch cold
to stay up late
to go to the pub a lot
to go out alone, etc.

Don't forget: to have three meals every day
to pay the rent on time
to do the cleaning every week
to keep food in the fridge
to switch off the iron and the television, etc.

14

Answer the following questions.
Make up similar questions of your own and make your fellow-students reply.

I.
- What should you avoid doing?
- What should you consider doing?
- What should you contemplate doing?
- What should you delay doing?

II.
- What has your friend denied having done?
- What has your friend admitted having done?
- What doesn't your friend mind doing?
- What does your friend enjoy doing?
- What does your friend detest doing?
- What does your friend dislike doing?

III.
- What do you usually fancy doing in the evening?
- What do you usually hate doing?
- What can you risk doing once in a while?
- What can't you help doing on weekends?
- What can't you stand doing on weekends?

IV.
- What can't you imagine doing in the morning?
- What do you usually put off doing?
- What do you recollect doing a fortnight ago?

15

Read the English sentences.
Point out the gerundial construction used as object.
Choose the corresponding Russian sentence.

1. ***She mentioned her husband having gone to New York with his friends.***
   a) Она упомянула, что ее муж уехал в Нью-Йорк с друзьями.
   b) Она упомянула своего мужа, который уехал в Нью-Йорк с друзьями.
   c) Она упомянула, что ее муж едет в Нью-Йорк с друзьями.

2. ***Would you mind the window being kept open?***
   a) Вы не возражаете, если откроют окно?
   b) Вы не возражаете, если окно оставить открытым?
   c) Ничего, что открыли окно?

3. ***Imagine Raymond's having engaged in commerce.***
   a) Представь себе, что Реймонд занялся коммерцией.
   b) Представь себе Реймонда, занимающегося коммерцией.
   c) Представь себе Реймонда и что он занимается коммерцией.

4. ***I find it awful your not helping your grandparents.***
   a) Я считаю ужасным, что твои бабушка с дедушкой тебе не помогают.
   b) Я считаю, что ужасно, что ты не помогаешь бабушке с дедушкой.
   c) Я считаю, что ужасно, что ты не помог бабушке с дедушкой.

16

Translate into English by simple sentences.
Use a direct gerund-object.

1. Я не могла не заметить, как он побледнел.
2. В детстве она любила читать о животных.
3. Ты не возражаешь против того, чтобы уйти домой пораньше?
4. Мне не нужно напоминать о моих обязанностях.
5. Некоторое время Бет обдумывала, не оставить ли его одного.
6. Мне невыносимо было думать об отъезде.
7. Вообще-то Нэнси нравится заниматься уборкой.
8. У него было несколько порезов, на которые надо было наложить швы *(to stitch)*.
9. Он не рискнет потерять твое доверие.
10. Люси не помнила, чтобы мать когда-нибудь ругала ее за что-нибудь.
11. Все считали, что больному требуется уход.
12. Ей не доставало подшучиваний *(to tease)* Теда над ней.
13. Алан терпеть не мог, когда ему делали замечания, что он курит.
14. Бет не очень-то ценила, когда к ней относились *(to treat)* снисходительно *(condescendingly)*.

15. Его слова означали, что ее скоро уволят *(to dismiss)*.
16. Вообразите, что он только недавно узнал правду.
17. Одри чуть не порезала *(to narrowly miss + a gerund)* себе палец.
18. Это доказывает, что ты уже давно привык к своей работе.
19. Она не допускала, что ее обманули.
20. Мы и не отрицали, что нас не пригласили на конференцию.
21. Я всегда получаю удовольствие, когда бегло говорят по-английски.
22. Он не может тебе простить того, что ты ему солгал.
23. Он когда-нибудь упоминал, что послал заявку на этот конкурс *(to send in an application for)*?
24. Я не оправдываю Ваше вмешательство в мои дела.
25. Я не склонен говорить об этом и откладываю разговор на неопределенное время *(indefinitely)*.
26. Я не предлагаю Вам ехать на эту выставку.
27. Джон понял мое нежелание *(to be unwilling)* снова с ним встречаться.
28. Президент все еще противится подписанию этого договора.
29. Многие люди не выносят, когда дети себя плохо ведут.

17

Put the verbs in parenthesis either into the form of a gerund or an infinitive.
Note any alternatives that might give a different meaning.

MODEL

I regret *(to answer)* you in that way.
I regret **answering** you in that way.
("regret **answering**" means sorry for what has happened "sorry that I have answered in that way")

I regret *(to inform)* you that your son had a bad accident in his car.
I regret **to inform** you that your son had a bad accident in his car.
("regret **to inform** you" means "sorry for what I'm going to say")

см. стр. 118

1. If you can't unscrew the lid, try *(to hit)* it with a hammer.
2. The police suspect him of trying *(to sell)* stolen goods.
3. I'm glad I don't have to work such long hours as Susan. I wouldn't like *(to work)* eighty hours a week.
4. I'm afraid there's a queue outside the theatre. And I hate *(to queue)*.
5. Steve's hobby is swimming. He likes *(to swim)*.
6. Ordering clothes from a catalogue isn't a good idea because you can't try them on. I like *(to try them on)* in a shop first.
7. I remember *(to hear)* him say the grass needed *(to cut)*.
8. I mean *(to work)* harder next year.
9. Having an extra class tomorrow means *(we, to work)* extra hours tonight.
10. I must remember *(to post)* the letter.
11. I don't remember *(to post)* the letter.
12. I forgot *(to phone)* my friend yesterday.
13. I shall never forget *(to talk)* to my friend that night.
14. I regretted *(to say)* it wasn't true.
    (...was sorry that I said...)
15. I regretted *(to say)* it wasn't true.
    (I'm sorry that I must now say...)
16. Though he didn't know French well, he tried *(to speak)* French to us.
17. We couldn't understand him, so hoping that we should understand him better he tried *(to speak)* French to us.
18. Did you forget *(to remind)* John to pay back the money he owes us?
19. He can't forget *(to dance)* with you all that night long.
20. My friend is writing a scientific paper. It means *(to work)* in the library a lot.
21. I mean *(to travel)* to England and France next year.
22. The librarian doesn't allow us *(to talk)* here.
23. The librarian doesn't allow *(to talk)* in the reading hall.
24. I hate *(to write)* letters.
25. I hate *(to ask)* you personal questions, but it's part of my business, I can't help it.
26. Your trousers need *(to dry-clean)*.
27. We need *(to start)* at once, or we may be late.

28. I asked them to stop *(to talk)* but they went on *(to chatter)* all the same.
29. We finished *(to translate)* the text and went on *(to analyze)* them.
30. They forbid students *(to smoke)* in the faculty building.
31. They forbid *(to smoke)* in the faculty building.

18

Make one sentence out of two.
Use either a gerund or a to-infinitive.

MODEL

Daniel didn't call in at the shop to take the cake. He forgot. →
Daniel *forgot* ***to call*** **in at the shop to take the cake**.

He said that he forgot that he had promised it. →
He said that he *forgot* ***promising*** **it**.

1. Polly didn't phone me. She forgot.
2. Sophie missed her chance to get a medal at school. She regrets it.
3. The house looks shabby. We must paint it. It needs it.
4. We had been playing tennis for hours. And still we went on with the game.
5. The singer didn't think he could sing that difficult song. He didn't even try.
6. He once saw the Beatles. He will always remember it.
7. Mike was rude to his mother. He didn't mean it.
8. I left the door open. I didn't lock it. I forgot.
9. It's a pity we didn't visit Jane. I would like it.

We should not let our fears hold us back **from *pursuing* our hopes**.

J. F. Kennedy

Liberty consists **in *doing* what one desires**.

J. Mill

We judge ourselves by what we feel capable **of *doing***, while others judge us by what we have already done.

H. Longfellow

4. b) THE PREPOSITIONAL OBJECT

As the prepositional object the gerund may follow a) **verbs**, b) **adjectives and statives**, c) **participle II**.

a) **verbs**

I	II	III	IV	V	
I	agree object look forward take *(took)* *(приобрести привычку, пристраститься к)*		**to**	your our his Mary's	going there.

I	II	III	IV	V
We	hear learn think dream		**of**	consulting him.
	suspect accuse	him him	**of**	doing something wrong.
All It	persist succeed consist(s) assist(s) help(s) result(s)		**in**	doing it.
We	depend rely count insist congratulate	you	**on**	
I'll	prevent stop discourage	them	**from**	taking part in it.
	warn	him her	**against**	
	decide *(...не)*			
I	thank blame praise punish reproach sentence	you you her him them him	**for**	doing it.
	feel		**like**	

It was clear that Abraham never **had agreed** *to their being married.*
Было ясно, что Эйбрахам никогда не давал согласия на их женитьбу.

I'**m looking forward** *to his leaving.*
Я не дождусь, когда он уйдет.

Do you **object** *to smoking*?
Ты возражаешь против курения?

I'**ve heard** *of the water mill being used.*
Я слышал, что используют водяную мельницу.

Were you **thinking** *of turning her out*?
Ты думал о том, чтобы выгнать ее?

She **dreamed** *of somehow being able to do something for her father.*
Она мечтала о том, чтобы как-то суметь сделать что-нибудь для отца.

He **was accused** *of taking money.*
Его обвинили в краже денег.

He **was suspected** *of having stolen the money.*
Его подозревали в краже денег.

They couldn't **stop** him *from doing stupid things.*
Они не могли уговорить его не делать глупостей.

He **will persist** *in smoking* though he is unwell.
Он упорно продолжает курить, несмотря на то, что плохо себя чувствует.

He **succeeded** *in finishing his thesis.*
Ему удалось закончить диссертацию.

She **assisted (helped)** her husband *in building the house.*
Она помогала мужу строить дом.

The quarrel **resulted** *in his mother leaving the house.*
В результате ссоры его мать ушла из дома.

She **insisted** *on his coming.*
Она настаивала на том, чтобы он пришел сюда.

We can't **count** *on the weather being fine.*
Мы не можем рассчитывать на хорошую погоду./...на то, что погода будет хорошая.

Don't rely *on me helping you with this job.*
Не полагайся на то, что я помогу тебе с этой работой.

I had to bite my lip **to prevent** myself *from laughing*
Мне пришлось закусить губу, чтобы не засмеяться.

You can't **blame** people *for misinterpreting you.*
Нельзя обвинять людей в том, что они вас неправильно понимают.

The old lady **thanked** me *for helping her across the road.*
Старушка поблагодарила меня за то, что я помог ей перейти дорогу.

You should **be punished** *for driving carelessly.*
Вас следует наказать за неосторожную езду.

I **don't feel** *like walking today.*
Мне не хочется сегодня гулять.

It was too hot and Ann **decided** *against going to the south.*
Было слишком жарко, так что Анн решила не ехать на юг.

My friend **warned** *me against doing business with this firm.*
Друг предостерег меня, чтобы я не имел дела с этой фирмой.

PEOPLE SAY

You can't prevent life **from *going on* and *changing***.

Author Unidentified

❖ ❖ ❖

A man's maturity consists **in *having found* again the seriousness one had as a child, at play**.

Author Unidentified

❖ ❖ ❖

Originality does not consist **in *saying* what no one has ever said before**, but **in *saying* exactly what you think yourself**.

J. F. Stephen

❖ ❖ ❖

We reproach people **for *talking* about themselves**; but it is the subject they treat best.

Author Unidentified

b) **adjectives** and **statives**

I	II	III	IV
I'm	afraid aware/unaware conscious/unconscious capable fond ignorant proud sick sure	**of**	being hurt. doing it. your being there.

I	II	III	IV
He is	clever/good/bad	**at**	doing crossword puzzles.
We're	responsible	**for**	his coming.
	sorry	**about**	
	keen	**on**	

I was **afraid** *of John's having an accident.*
Я боялся, как бы Джон не попал в аварию.

She is not **aware** *of her husband being in danger.*
Она не осознает, что ее мужу угрожает опасность.

He was **unaware** *of being followed.*
Он не знал, что за ним идут.

She is **capable** *of getting into trouble to spite me.*
Она способна попасть в беду назло мне.

He is **unconscious** *of having given her the slightest ground for offence.*
Он и не подозревает (не сознает), что дал ей какое-то основание для обиды.

Sid is **sick** *of hearing about your sulks every time he comes home.*
Сиду надоело каждый раз, когда он приходит домой, слышать о твоем плохом настроении.

He is **sure** *of having seen you.*
Он уверен, что видел вас.

Our figure skaters are **proud** *of always winning world prizes.*
Наши фигуристы гордятся тем, что всегда занимают призовые места на мировых чемпионатах.

We are **sorry** *about having missed the performance.*
Нам жаль, что мы пропустили спектакль.

You are **responsible** to your mother *for keeping the house tidy.*
Ты отвечаешь перед матерью за порядок в доме.

She is **keen** *on John passing this examination.*
Она очень хочет, чтобы Джон сдал этот экзамен.

The stative *afraid* can be followed by either a gerund or an infinitive with a difference in meaning.

be afraid + a gerund	**be afraid + an infinitive**
= *not to want to do* something for some reason	= *dare not do* something
I'*m afraid* **of *making* her angry**. (= I don't want to do this because I think it will make her angry.) Я боюсь, что это может рассердить ее.	I'*m afraid* ***to make* her angry**. (= I daren't make her angry.) Я не смею сердить ее.
I can't play the piano now as I'*m afraid* ***of disturbing* him**. (= I don't want to play as the noise might disturb him.) Я не могу играть сейчас на рояле, т. к. боюсь ему помешать.	I'*m afraid* ***to disturb* him at this late hour**. (= I daren't disturb him.) Я не смею мешать ему так поздно.

PEOPLE SAY

He who is the most slow **in *making* a promise** is the most faithful in the performance of it.

Author Unidentified

c) **participle II**

I	II	III	IV
I'm	annoyed pleased displeased	**with/at**	the teacher asking me so often. doing it.
	surprised disappointed	**at**	
	excited	**about**	
	accustomed used	**to**	
	absorbed engrossed engaged interested	**in**	
	tired scared	**of**	
	bored	**with**	

She was **displeased** *at being introduced to her own niece.*
Она была недовольна, что ее представили ее собственной племяннице.

The secretary was **disappointed** *at not getting the pay rise he had hoped for.*
Секретарь был огорчен (разочарован), что не получил прибавку к зарплате, на которую рассчитывал.

The policeman was **surprised** *at the prisoner having admitted his guilt.*
Полицейский удивился, что заключенный признал свою вину.

He was too **used** *to receiving practically nothing for his books.*
Он слишком привык к тому, что фактически ничего не получал за свои книги.

Are any members of this family really **interested** *in buying the house?*
Кто-нибудь в этой семье действительно интересуется покупкой этого дома?

The old lady was **engaged** *in making clothes for her neighbours' children.*
Старушка была занята шитьем одежды для соседских детей.

Time passes quickly when you are **absorbed** *in reading a good book.*
Время проходит быстро, когда ты поглощен чтением хорошей книги.

He was so **engrossed** *in watching the game* that he didn't notice the cold.
Он был так поглощен игрой (наблюдением за игрой), что не чувствовал холода.

It's a story that children are never **tired** *of hearing.*
Это такой рассказ, который дети никогда не устают слушать.

He could also be **scared** *of getting involved in the project.*
Он мог также бояться, что его вовлекут в это предприятие.

PEOPLE SAY

Get used **to *thinking* that there is nothing Nature loves so well as to change existing forms and to make new ones like them.**

Author Unidentified

KEEP SMILING

A SENSE OF DUTY

A tourist dining at a hotel is annoyed **at the waiter continually *hovering* around his table**.

"I have no patience with you, young man," he says at last. "I'd like to know what you want with me." "Excuse me, sir, **for *being* about**!" says the waiter blushing, "but I am responsible for the silver."

❖ ❖ ❖

JUDGE: You are accused **of *shooting* squirrels out of season**. Have you any plea?

HUNTER: Yes, your honour. Self-defence.

❖ ❖ ❖

A BROTHER ACTOR

Two young actors taking a walk in the park are accosted by a pale and shabby man. He asks them for help. One of the young men gives him several shillings. The other, displeased **at his friend's *being* too liberal**, rebukes him.

"Aren't you yourself short of money?" he says. "I never doubt this man being an impostor." "Well, and what if I am not afraid **of his *being* an impostor**?" says the other laughing good-humouredly. "For he is either a man in distress or the best actor in the world. What can you say in either case **against his *having* a right to my assistance**?"

KEEP SMILING

SIMPLE MEANS

YOUNG GIRL: Could you tell me, dear aunt, how you have succeeded **in *preserving* my uncle's love and respect through all these long years of your married life**?

OLD AUNT: Well, my child, by very simple means, by doing all that pleased him and by enduring silently all that displeased me.

❖ ❖ ❖

AN INCURABLE DISEASE

A wealthy man who is very fond **of *joking*** asks his family physician to give him some medicine that will cure him **of *sleeping* with his mouth open**.

"Your disease is incurable," says the doctor, quick to see a joke. "Your skin is too short; so that when you shut your eyes, you can't help opening your mouth."

❖ ❖ ❖

TEACHER (IN HISTORY LESSON): In the olden days men were often put in prison without any proper reason, but today we never think **of *punishing* people for things they have not done**.

BAD BOY (SULKILY): Then why was I caned yesterday 'cause I didn't do my 'ome work?

❖ ❖ ❖

REPORTER: What is the professor's research work?

PROF'S HOUSEKEEPER: It consists principally **in *hunting* for his spectacles**.

KEEP SMILING

SHE: Jack, I was sorry to treat you the way I did. You'll forgive me, won't you, **for *being* so angry with you all last week**?

HE: Certainly, that's all right. I saved 20 pounds while we weren't on speaking terms.

❖ ❖ ❖

A young lady entered a crowded bus with a pair of skates slung over her arm.

An elderly gentleman arose to give her his seat.

"Thank you very much, sir," she said, "but I've been skating all afternoon and I'm tired **of *sitting down***."

❖ ❖ ❖

TEACHER: What is the surest way to keep milk **from *souring***?

PUPIL: Leave it in the cow.

❖ ❖ ❖

LAWLESS PERIOD OF AVIATION HISTORY

Some old aviators were talking **about *flying.*** "I knew an inventor," said one of them, "who had an airplane that could stay in the air sixty-five days without any fuel."

"That's impossible." The man was told. "He'd have to come down on accounts of the law of gravity."

"Not that inventor. He went up before the law was passed."

III.4. EXERCISES

1

Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction.
Underline it with a double line.
Define its syntactical function.
Underline the verb or other parts of speech the gerund refers to with a single line.
Translate the sentences into Russian.

MODEL

Thank you *for phoning*.
The gerund is used as a prepositional object.
Спасибо, что ***позвонили***.

A

1. Thanks for phoning.
2. You would insist on the lock being changed.
3. I'll look forward to seeing you.
4. I don't object to being seen.
5. She dreamed of somehow being able to help her step mother.
6. You can't blame people for misinterpreting you.
7. The girl had to bite her lip to prevent herself from laughing.
8. He suspected her of putting arsenic *(мышьяк)* into his lunch.
9. She didn't count on Mike's turning up.
10. He had never succeeded in intimidating *(to intimidate — устрашать)* either her or her mother.
11. He was blaming her for his father's scheming *(to scheme — вести интриги)*.
12. John was determined to look elsewhere for financing.
13. She murmured something about fetching another cake.
14. You were worrying about being underdressed for the occasion.
15. He could apologise for behaving so arrogantly.
16. James concentrated on pouring a drink.
18. You look at me as if you suspect me of having packed my pet python *(питон)* into the case.
19. She forgot about washing herself.

B
1. She would be more than capable of filing the papers.
2. I'm not interested in going through that again.
3. He wasn't fond of causing trouble.
4. Lloyd is good at fixing things.
5. He was getting tired of feeling out of control.
6. Jack could be very accomplished at concealing his true feelings.
7. He is sick of hearing about your sulks every time he comes home.
8. She was used to seeing him at the office.
9. He is unconscious of having done something wrong.
10. You are getting too big for playing football.
11. He was good at coping with irascible *(раздражительный)* clients.
12. Willie is scared of being sent away.
13. Your mother thinks I am incapable of producing a decent cup of tea.
14. There was nothing strange about telling him the truth.
15. Mum was always funny *(зд. странно относиться)* about accepting his help.
16. Joan was unused to seeing her father so ill.
17. She wasn't given to blushing.
18. Should I be justified in taking advantage of your position?
19. He was afraid of bothering her with little things.
20. I don't feel like going out tonight.

2 **Paraphrase the following sentences according to the model. Use *don't feel like + a gerund*.**

MODEL

I wanted to go away. →
I *felt like* ***going away***.

I didn't want to go away. →
I *didn't feel like* ***going away***.

Did she want to go away? →
Did she *feel like* ***going away***?

1. I wanted to invite these people.
2. I didn't want to read his new novel.
3. Did you want to smoke?

см. стр. 134

4. I didn't want to see him again.
5. I wanted to sleep.
6. Did you want to cry?
7. I didn't want to be rude.
8. Did you really want to clean the house?
9. I wanted to leave the party.
10. Did you want to take a shower?
11. I didn't want to travel by air.
12. I was thirsty and wanted to have a glass of cold water.

Insert prepositions where necessary.

1. He is fond ... listening to music.
2. Thank you ... taking me sightseeing.
3. I'll never agree ... changing my plan.
4. He always succeeds ... proving his point of view.
5. They insisted ... my taking part in the business.
6. He was pleased ... meeting you.
7. Will you excuse me ... being late?
8. What prevented him ... taking this rush order?
9. He thinks ... changing his job.
10. He likes ... helping people.
11. George resents ... being criticised.
12. Could you forgive me ... not answering your letter?
13. We suggest ... leaving at once.
14. John has taken ... drinking.
15. Do you feel ... visiting your friend?
16. George is looking forward ... seeing you.
17. Why are you disappointed ... her entering the college?
18. He is always displeased ... being disturbed.
19. Is he accustomed ... working hard?
20. I'm scared ... going through the wood at night.
21. Is the film worth ... seeing?
22. Please excuse ... my interrupting you.
23. I won't risk ... losing such an interesting job.

4

Complete the sentences.
Use the proper preposition and the proper form of the gerund of the verbs given in parenthesis.

MODEL

Excuse me ... *(to be late).*
Excuse me **for *being late***.

1. He thinks ... *(to go on a trip to London).*
2. I thanked him ... *(to visit the sick man).*
3. She is used ... *(to ask about her famous father).*
4. He succeeded ... *(to start a new business).*
5. Are you afraid ... *(to be late)?*
6. June was surprised ... *(not to find him in his office).*
7. Forgive him ... *(to tell you a lie).*
8. George is pleased ... *(to win the race).*
9. Who is fond ... *(to write letters)?*
10. He will never agree ... *(to leave his post).*
11. Does James insist ... *(to be present at the conference)?*
12. Are you angry ... *(not to be invited to the party)?*
13. I'm tired ... *(to repeat the same thing to you).*
14. We do not object ... *(to take him with us).*
15. What prevented you ... *(to come here)?*

5

Open the parenthesis.
Use the proper preposition and the proper form of the gerund of the verbs in parenthesis.

A

1. The complicated rules will discourage people *(to play)* the game.
2. I don't approve *(to smoke).*
3. I believe *(to discuss)* things openly.
4. I don't feel *(to cook)* tonight.
5. Unfortunately Sean insisted *(to speak)* only about himself during the whole evening.
6. If you don't book in advance, you can't rely *(to find)* a hotel room.
7. People objected *(to have to wait)* so long.

8. I'm thinking *(to go)* to some sea-resort in summer.
9. She succeeded *(to get)* the visa to the US.
10. They're talking *(to build)* a new sports center.
11. The tourists complained *(not to get)* any sleep.
12. He accused his enemies *(to invent)* stories about him.
13. I don't blame you *(to think)* about your own safety.
14. We congratulate you *(to complete)* your work.
15. The firemen prevented the fire *(to spread)*.
16. I apologized *(not to answer)* the letter.
17. I don't believe *(to work)* too hard.
18. He accused me *(to tell)* lies.
19. I'm looking forward *(to see)* you soon.

B

1. Debbie is really excited *(to go)* abroad for the first time.
2. People were annoyed *(not to see)* everything properly.
3. I'm bored *(to wait)* here doing nothing.
4. Is this bus capable *(to take)* us all the way to Paris?
5. Ted is fond *(to fish)*.
6. Andrew is very fond *(to tell)* jokes.
7. The man was found guilty *(to steal)* bicycles.
8. We are interested *(to start)* a discussion group.
9. Sophie is very keen *(to go)* to art college.
10. I'm pleased *(to go)* for a fitting tomorrow.
11. I found him absorbed *(to watch)* a new video film.
12. The man was disappointed *(not to admit)* to the meeting.
13. I was greatly surprised *(to see)* Alan at the party.
14. Are you scared *(to walk)* alone through the dark streets at night?
15. Can we meet tonight or will you be again engaged *(to complete)* your work?

6

Combine each pair of sentences into one.
Use a gerund with the proper preposition.

MODEL

The firemen stopped the fire. It didn't spread. →
The firemen *stopped* **the fire from** ***spreading***.

см. стр. 137

1. My friend apologized. He broke my cassette-player.
2. The surgeon succeeded. He transplanted the kidney and saved the patient's life.
3. Jane congratulated Ted. He got a Ph.D.[1] in Medicine.
4. The customer complained. He was given a bad umbrella.
5. The police prevented the crime. It didn't take place.
6. She is very fat and the doctors do not approve of it. They think she shouldn't eat so much.
7. Higher prices will discourage people. They won't buy things.
8. The police should punish the driver. He broke the speed limit.
9. People blamed the driver. He didn't stop at the crossroads.
10. The workers have accused the management. They say the management is doing nothing to change the dramatic situation.
11. He blames me. He says I think only about myself.
12. I thanked him. He told me the news.

7

Make up a simple sentence.
Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase.

MODEL

She couldn't help it, she made business of everything. →
She *couldn't help* ***making*** **business of everything**.

1. They accused their friend of the fact that he was not a man of his word.
2. I suspected that she was making things hot for her enemies.
3. We insisted that she should reject your terms.
4. I'm looking forward to the day when you're in the mood of playing music for me.
5. He succeeded and made his fortune out of some canal business.

[1]Ph. D. – an abbreviation for "Doctor of Philosophy" – the highest degree given by a university.

6. I rely on the hope that you will do me justice.
7. She felt in the mood to talk business *(feel like)*.
8. We were disappointed that the picture had no great value.
9. She dreamed that sooner or later they would come to an amicable agreement.
10. She complained that they were not strong enough to endure such trials *(испытания)*.
11. He objected to the fact that Mrs Broad should stay in the house any longer.
12. She wasn't aware that you had accepted our terms.
13. They were guilty that they had not enquired into the matter.
14. They were indignant that you were not calling things their proper names.

8

Respond to the following *why*-questions beginning with *Because.*
Use a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a construction as prepositional object.

MODEL

Why aren't you joining the discussion club?
(be keen on, discuss)
Because I'*m not keen on* ***discussing*** **anything**.

1. Why don't you ask George to help you pack?
(not rely on, pack)
2. Why did you decline their invitation?
(my husband, object, visit them)
3. Why is Alan so happy? *(succeed in, finish the experiment)*
4. Why didn't you go to London?
(John, insist on, be sent instead)
5. Why do you think James has bad manners?
(not stop oneself from, interrupt everybody)
6. Why don't you let the children take part in your dinner parties? *(disapprove of, children take part in the grown-ups' talk)*

7. What's wrong? Why is Jane so upset?
   (be displeased at, I, go abroad alone)
8. Why is Meg so cross? *(suspect me of, tell her lies)*
9. Why is Mum scolding you? *(accuse of, I, leave the light on)*
10. Why is Mike leaving the job? *(complain of, be underpaid)*
11. Why have you changed the doctor?
    (not agree to, give the medicine free)
12. Why isn't Elise coming with us? *(not feel like, go out today)*
13. Why didn't you ask James to help you? *(be afraid, ask)*
14. Why haven't you ordered a taxi? *(not count, it come on time)*
15. Why are you so excited? *(look forward to, the bride, arrive)*
16. Why didn't you take part in the game?
    (the coach, discourage, me, play)
17. Isn't it time you had your flat repaired? Why don't you start?
    (be afraid of, turn everything upside down)

9 **What can you say about the following types of people?**

MODEL

A ballet dancer is afraid ***of gaining* weight**, is proud ***of having* many curtain calls**, is fond ***of being given* a lot of flowers**, may not always be sure ***of being* good at pirouettes**, may complain ***of being tired***, but on the whole is pleased ***at practising* as much as possible**.

Speak about:	**To characterise them use the following:**
an actress	to be fond of
an artist	to be proud of
a driver	to be sure of
a scientist	to complain of
a teacher	to be afraid of
a ballet dancer	to be pleased at

см. стр. 140

a singer
a young lover
a chemist
a doctor
a footballer
a disc jockey
a hearty eater

to succeed in
to be tired of
to be interested in,
etc.

10

Give answers to the following questions.
Use a gerundial construction as prepositional object.
Note that the subject should not coincide with the nominal element of the construction.

MODEL

– The children watch TV every day. What does their mother object to?
– She objects **to the children *watching* TV every day**.

1. Michael went back on his word.
   What are you surprised at?
2. She is ill.
   What does the doctor insist on?
3. Nick is late again.
   What is the teacher angry at?
4. The students were noisy at the lecture.
   What was the lecturer annoyed at?
5. My friend failed in the exam.
   What were his parents greatly displeased at?
6. He always does everything well.
   What is his mother sure of?
7. Mary has come back.
   What are you pleased at?
8. Jack usually stays up late.
   What do his parents insist on?
9. Bob is fond of prompting at tests.
   What does his teacher object to?

10. We asked John to help us.
    What did he agree to?
11. Everybody helps Ann.
    What is she used to?
12. Bill has won the first prize in chess tournament.
    What are his friends proud of?
13. They often smoke in the office.
    What does their boss object to?
14. I waited for him, but he never came.
    What was I disappointed at?

11 **Respond to the following questions.**
Give a complete answer.

A

MODEL

– Who can agree to your being sent abroad on business?
– Well, of course my boss will agree **to my *being sent* abroad on business**.

– What is he blamed for?
– He is blamed **for *insulting* his teacher**.

1. Who is looking forward to listening to Placido Domingo?
2. Who will object to getting a good job?
3. Who may think of joining a literary club?
4. Who counts on your always knowing right from wrong?
5. Why do you rely on the manager's doing something for you?
6. Who congratulated you on having won the prize?
7. Why did your father prevent you from going to the disco?
8. Who praised him for helping the old woman?
9. Who blamed you for cutting classes?
10. Who punished you for smoking in public places?

B

MODEL

— Who may be aware of your being in the know of the environmental problems?
— I think my boss is aware **of my *knowing* it**.

1. Who may be afraid of your being invited to see a horror film?
2. Who may be capable of letting you down?
3. Who may be fond of writing letters?
4. Who is proud of having entered the university?
5. Who is clever enough at writing a paper on art?
6. Who is responsible for the journalist having been murdered?
7. Who is sorry for having caused so much trouble?
8. Who is keen on helping you finish this work?
9. Who is ignorant of being involved in something dishonest?
10. Who is unconscious of being used by other people?
11. Who is sick of talking of the matter again and again?

C

MODEL

— Who will be disappointed at having no visitors? *(a Restaurant owner)*
— I think a restaurant owner will be disappointed **at *having* no visitors**.

— What are you displeased with? *(Jack; to get bad marks)*
— I'm displeased **with Jack *getting* bad marks**.

1. Who will be pleased at having a lot of visitors? *(a hotel keeper)*
2. Who can be surprised at seeing an elephant in the street? *(anyone)*
3. What may a cook be accustomed to doing? *(to cook lunches)*
4. What is a talented actor used to? *(to have curtain calls)*
5. What can you be absorbed in at the lesson? *(to write a test paper)*

6. What are people usually pleased with?
   (to make a lot of friends)
7. What are most businessmen interested in?
   (to make a lot of money)
8. What can any businessman be scared of?
   (to lose his business)
9. What are you tired of? *(to do the exercise)*
10. What is your friend engrossed in at the moment?
    (to read a new novel by John Fowles)

12

Translate into English.
Use a gerund.
Note the form of the gerund.
Choose the correct preposition if necessary.

A

1. Я не против того, чтобы ты подвез меня к театру.
2. У него был такой смешной вид, что Элиза не могла не рассмеяться.
3. Она терпеть не могла, когда ей делают замечания.
   (to find fault with)
4. Он не мог поддерживать ее так, как ей нужно было, чтобы ее поддерживали.
5. Она скучала по тому, как Джерри подшучивал над ней, когда они гуляли по вечерам.
6. Ей не нравится говорить людям неприятные вещи.
7. Мать думала, что его примут в Университет.
8. Мне не очень хочется выходить в такую погоду.
9. Он любил читать мифы Древней Греции.
10. Я не понимаю, почему ты сердишься на меня.
11. Ей не нравилось, когда из нее делали дурочку.
12. Он избегал превышать скорость.
13. Ему была невыносима мысль о том, чтобы приехать сюда снова.
14. Джессика не могла вспомнить, когда она видела, чтобы мать плакала.
15. Я не хочу рисковать и терять свои водительские права.

16. Я знаю, что ей может прийти в голову *(to fancy)* уехать отсюда навсегда.
17. Майкл не очень-то одобрял *(to appreciate)*, когда с ним так обращались.
18. Представь себе, что он здесь никогда раньше не бывал.
19. Это означало, что ты не сдержала свое слово.

B

1. Я и думать не могу о том, чтобы этот дом превратили в ужасный отель.
2. Он будет возражать против того, чтобы его сын ходил по ночным клубам.
3. Джон сказал что-то о том, что члены их семьи никогда не умирали в больнице.
4. Я не удивляюсь, что она занялась преподаванием.
5. Я говорю о том, чтобы подписать наше соглашение.
6. Она не могла помешать ему играть в такую игру.
7. Что ты знаешь о том, как заваривать чай?
8. Он посвятил себя тому, чтобы дать ей хорошее образование.
9. Вы сами настаивали на том, чтобы он приехал сюда.
10. Кристина не могла помешать Тому заниматься своим делом.
11. Мысли о прошлом ничего не могли дать. *(There was nothing to be gained...)*
12. Он оставил письмо, обвиняя ее в том, что она обманула его.
13. Я не думаю, что ты привык использовать силу.
14. Он не может простить ее за то, что она отказалась от нашего плана.
15. Они обвиняли *(to charge)* ее в том, что она нарушила их покой *(to disturb one's peace)*.
16. Некоторое время он не давал *(to stop from)* ей думать об этой трагедии.
17. Я слышал, что его использовали в этом деле.
18. Ей удалось еще больше ухудшить ситуацию *(to make the situation worse)*.

19. Как это ты уговорил *(to talk into)* ее оставить семью на *(for)* выходные?
20. Может, он просто боится полюбить?

C
1. Мне не интересно снова через это все проходить.
2. Я привыкла делать все для твоего отца.
3. Он очень хорошо умеет скрывать свои чувства.
4. Джек не любил *(to be fond)* причинять неприятности.
5. Он почувствовал, что устал от своей беспомощности.
6. Мне надоело слушать о твоем плохом настроении *(low spirits)*.
7. Она вполне может попасть в какое-нибудь неприятное положение *(to get into trouble)*.
8. Роберт умел *(to be good at)* хорошо общаться со сложными клиентами.
9. Динни не была заинтересована в продаже дома.
10. Мальчик напуган, что его обвинят в убийстве *(to charge with murder)*.
11. Не было ничего странного в том, что ей представили нового менеджера.
12. Брат не осознавал того, что сделал что-то плохое и обидел своего друга.
13. Ему было приятно, когда его расспрашивали о его новой книге.
14. Он ничего не знал *(to be ignorant)* о том, что кто-то приехал.
15. Мой брат очень удивился, что я уже закончил работу.
16. Мне жаль, что я упустила такую возможность.
17. Кто отвечает за то, чтобы все было отремонтировано?
18. Я хотел поговорить с ней, но она вся была поглощена музыкой (...тем, что слушала музыку).
19. Ева была занята организацией встречи.
20. Они гордятся тем, что их сын так хорошо учится.
21. Надо починить телевизор.
22. Этот роман стоит прочесть.
23. Пол надо натереть.

Rhetoric is the art **of *ruling* the minds of men**.

Plato

Jealousy is that dragon which slays love under the pretence **of *keeping* it alive**.

H. Ellis

5. THE ATTRIBUTE

As the attribute the gerund is most often preceded by a preposition, mostly by the preposition ***of***. It generally modifies *abstract* nouns, such as:

air	*вид*
art	*искусство, умение*
business	*дело*
chance	*возможность*
danger	*опасность*
habit	*привычка*
hope	*надежда*
idea	*мысль*
impression	*впечатление*
intention	*намерение*
knowledge	*знание*
method	*метод, способ*
necessity	*необходимость, потребность*
opportunity	*возможность*
plan	*план, намерение*
pleasure	*удовольствие*
possibility	*возможность*
question	*вопрос*
recollection	*воспоминание*

risk	*риск*
sign	*знак*
way	*способ*

His **air** *of knowing everything* irritated her.
Ее раздражал его вид, как будто он все знает.

Emily reflected on the **business** of buying and selling cottages.
Эмили раздумывала о бизнесе, связанном с покупкой и продажей коттеджей.

There was no **chance** *of getting an invitation.*
Не было никакой возможности получить приглашение.

Poor Janet was in **danger** *of being mistaken for somebody else.*
Бедной Жанет угрожала опасность, что ее примут за кого-то другого.

She sometimes gave an **impression** *of being older than she really was.*
Иногда возникало впечатление, что ей больше лет, чем на самом деле.

He was depressed by the **necessity** *of coming to a decision.*
Его угнетала необходимость принять решение.

She examined the **possibility** *of going away and starting a new life.*
Она рассмотрела возможность уехать и начать новую жизнь.

I must deny myself the **pleasure** *of seeing you again.*
Я должен отказать себе в удовольствии увидеть Вас снова.

This new **way** *of talking* seemed unusual.
Этот новый способ разговаривать казался необычным.

PEOPLE SAY

The joys **of *meeting*** pay the pangs of absence;
Else who could bear it?

N. Rowe

❖ ❖ ❖

The secret **of *teaching*** is to appear to have known all your life what you learned this afternoon.

Author Unidentified

❖ ❖ ❖

To be prepared for war is not the most effectual means **of *preserving* peace**.

Address, 1790

❖ ❖ ❖

True kindness presupposes the faculty **of *imagining* as one's own the sufferings and joys of others.**

Author Unidentified

❖ ❖ ❖

There are more ways **of *killing* a dog than by hanging**.*

English proverb

❖ ❖ ❖

The future has a way **of *arriving* unannounced**.

George Will

But the choice of the preposition is sometimes limited by the meaning and the combinability of the modified noun:

at	for	in	to
surprise *at*	apology, capacity, need } *for*	confidence, experience, hesitation, sense, skill } *in*	objection *to*

Maude had no **hesitation** *in accepting the help.*
У Мод не было колебаний в том, чтобы принять помощь.

Where is the **sense** *in concealing this?*
Какой смысл скрывать это?

Human beings are not rationed in their **capacity** *for loving.*
Люди не ограничены в способности любить.
(Способность человека любить безгранична.)

I feel the **need** *for seeing you again.*
Я чувствую необходимость снова увидеть Вас.

What is your **objection** *to his joining us for the trip?*
Какие у Вас возражения против того, чтобы он поехал с нами?

PEOPLE SAY

When society requires to be rebuilt, *there* is no use **in *attempting*** to rebuild it on the old plan.

J. Mill

The gerund-attribute may also be a *premodifying* attribute, when it *precedes* the modified noun. Then it is used without a preposition. In this case the modified noun does not denote the doer of the action expressed by the gerund but usually denotes *the object* of the action expressed by the gerund.

'writing paper ⟶ paper *for* writing
a 'dancing hall ⟶ a hall *for* dancing
a 'swimming pool ⟶ a pool *for* swimming
a 'dancing teacher ⟶ he *teaches* dancing
a 'reading lamp ⟶ a lamp *for* reading
a 'walking stick ⟶ a stick *for* walking

Together with the modified noun the gerund-attribute makes an attributive phrase which has only *one stressed element* and it is the gerundial element.

She was in *'riding* clothes.
На ней был костюм для верховой езды.

In this case the gerundial attributive phrase should be distinguished from *the participial attributive phrase*, which differs from the gerundial one both in meaning and in its stress pattern: in the participial phrase the modified noun is *the doer of the action* expressed by the participle, thus *both* the elements are stressed *(two stresses)*.

a 'dancing 'girl ⟶ a girl *who* is dancing (or dances)
a 'writing 'man ⟶ a man *who* is writing (or writes)
a 'reading 'boy ⟶ a boy *who* is reading
a 'swimming 'man ⟶ a man *who* is swimming

Compare:

A Gerundial ATTRIBUTIVE Phrase		**A Participial ATTRIBUTIVE Phrase**
a 'swimming suit	–	a 'swimming 'girl
a 'laughing matter	–	a 'laughing 'child
a 'driving licence	–	a 'driving 'car
'landing time	–	a 'landing 'plane
'standing room	–	a 'standing 'man

KEEP SMILING

– Can you give me a ***reading*** **lamp**?
– Unfortunately I can't. All of them are illiterate.

❖ ❖ ❖

NECESSITY IS THE MOTHER OF INVENTION

An old vet felt that he was getting rather hard of hearing. So he decided to use some aids but the real ***hearing*** **aids** was too expensive and he went to a hardware store, bought some wire and put it in his ear.

"Do you hear better with that wire?" asked a friend.

"No," said the vet, "but the technical side always impresses. Friends start talking louder."

❖ ❖ ❖

A soldier on leave was trying to impress his girl with **his *learning* standards**.

"I'm a radio operator in the Air Force. Radio is such a complicated thing. Even now, after two years **of intensive *training***, I must confess that I haven't the slightest idea how the radio works in the whole complex."

"It's awfully easy," exclaimed the wide-eyed girl. "You must turn the knobs and it starts talking."

× × ×

FRESHMAN: Say, what's the idea **of *wearing* my raincoat**?

ROOMMATE: Well, you wouldn't want our new suit to get wet, would you?

KEEP SMILING

MACBETH

YOUNG MOTHER: What name would you like to give our baby, Tom?

YOUNG FATHER: I fully rely on your choosing him the right name.

YOUNG MOTHER: Don't be silly, you should be interested in giving your son a suitable name.

YOUNG FATHER: A suitable name? Then I'd call him Macbeth.

YOUNG MOTHER (MUCH SURPRISED): What's your reason **for *picking* up such an uncommon name**?

YOUNG FATHER: Isn't it a suitable one? Hasn't he "murdered sleep?"

❖ ❖ ❖

RICH MAN: There's no sense **in *teaching* the boy to count over 100**. He can hire accountants to do his book-keeping.

TUTOR: Yes, sir, but he'll want to play his own game of golf, won't he?

❖ ❖ ❖

MEDICAL PROFESSOR: What would you do in the case **of a person *eating* poisonous mushrooms**?

STUDENT: Recommend a change of diet.

KEEP SMILING

SECURITY RISK

The Security Officer reported to the commander: "I think, sir, Sergeant Morrison should be discharged from service as unreliable for security reasons."

"Why, he is only a cook!"

"Yes, but he's taken to the habit **of *spilling* beans**[1] too often."

[1]to spill beans – *игра слов:* проболтаться, раскрыть тайну и проливать фасолевый суп.

III.5. EXERCISES

1

Point out the gerund or the gerundial phrase used as attribute and underline the noun modified by it.
Translate the sentences into Russian.
Note the prepositions preceding the attributes.

MODEL

The best way **of *saving* money** is not to spend it.
Лучший способ ***сохранить*** деньги/***сохранения*** денег – не тратить их.

1. There is a great risk of meeting him again.
2. There is no necessity of saying it to you.
3. This is a perfect system for collecting data.
4. Diplomacy is the art of restraining power.
5. He has a chance of gaining the office in this election year.
6. Is there a means of making him obey?
7. Discrimination is the act of treating differently two persons or things under like circumstances.
8. There is a conflict between the two kinds of planning.
9. There was no way of keeping the profits up.
10. I am against the idea of feeding babies at any time they cry.
11. She did not like his habit of smoking a cigar after dinner.
12. He had no hope of seeing his girlfriend next week.
13. She did not tell me anything about her idea of marrying Jan.
14. I admire his remarkable skill in carving.
15. They ignored their parents' objection to selling their old car.
16. He was full of apologies for having hurt her.
17. There was no excuse for missing so many classes.
18. I was enjoying the experience of working with my colleague.
19. There are lots of devices for making measurements.
20. They had no hesitation in describing the situation as ridiculous.
21. There is a rhyme for washing hands in my book.

2

Make up a sentence using a gerund or a gerundial phrase as attribute.

1. There is / was	no/some little hope no necessity no/a means no/a way a good method no/a good chance	of	sending them an e-mail. finding a way out. making him change his mind. refining petroleum. starting a new career. getting the book.
2. It is / was / will be	the best way a good chance a good idea the best method	of	travelling abroad. controlling the disease. combining family life with a career. fixing radios. collecting money for charity.

3. I/We/They He/She	have (got) has (got) had	no/an idea no wish no/a habit	of	making a lemon pie. doing the flat every week. painting watercolours.
		no experience no skill	in	driving a car. interpreting. repairing telephones. making suits.
		no excuse	for	having let you down. having been rude to her. phoning him so seldom.

см. стр. 156

		no objection(s)	to	sharing domestic chores with his wife. taking his child to school on Wednesdays. having a party on Sunday. having a nap after dinner.

3 **Find the corresponding gerund-attribute to define the following notions.**

1. A thermometer is an instrument
2. A thermostat is a device
3. A barometer is an instrument
4. A transistor is an electronic device
5. A transmitter is a piece of equipment
6. A refrigerator is a large container
7. A telex is a machine
8. A computer is an electronic machine

1. for amplifying and switching signals.
2. for sending radio signals or for broadcasting programmes.
3. for keeping food and drinks so that they stay fresh.
4. for sending and receiving telex messages.
5. for controlling the temperature of a car engine.
6. for storing, rearranging information or controlling another machine.
7. for measuring air pressure.
8. for measuring the temperature of a room or of a person's body.

4 **Paraphrase the sentences.**
Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as attribute.

MODEL

I have an idea to write a short story. →
I have an idea **of *writing* a short story**.

см. стр. 157

1. He has no intention to get married.
2. We know about her desire to live in the country.
3. There is often a temptation to judge somebody.
4. She has an opportunity to get a scholarship.
5. There must be a way to solve the problem.
6. They can't find any means to make her believe them.
7. She is fed up with your habit to put things in the wrong place.
8. Our teacher has a good idea to take us to Paris in the summer.
9. Ann's boss disapproved of her objection to take a computer course.
10. We have no purpose to change the flat in the near future.
11. Little children have a big capacity to learn nursery rhymes by heart.

5

Paraphrase the sentences with a gerund.
Change the syntactical function of the gerund used as adverbial modifier of purpose into that of an attribute to express the purpose of different things used for cooking.

MODEL

Sugar is a sweet substance used **for *sweetening* food and drink**. →
Sugar is a sweet *substance* **for *sweetening* food and drink**.

1. Ginger is the root of a plant used for adding a spicy hot flavour to food.
2. Salt is a strong-tasting substance used for improving the flavour of food or preserving it.
3. Flour is a white or brown powder used for making bread, cakes, and pastry.
4. A herb is a plant used for adding flavour to food.
5. Dough is a mixture of flour and water, and sometimes also sugar and fat, which can be used for making bread, pastry, or biscuits.

6. Honey is a sweet, sticky yellowish substance made by bees and used for sweetening tea.
7. Spice is a powder or seeds from a plant used for giving flavour to food.
8. Oil is a smooth, thick, sticky liquid made from plants and used for cooking.
9. Paprica is a red powder used for flavouring food.
10. Milk is the white liquid produced by cows, goats and some other animals and it is used for making butter, cheese and yoghurt.
11. Pepper is a hot-tasting powder used for flavouring meat or fish.

6

Join the sentences paraphrasing them.
Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as attribute.
Use the noun suggested as a noun modified by the attribute.
Note the preposition before the attribute.

MODEL 1

Jogging every morning is one of his habits.
His parents like it. *(habit)* →
His parents like his *habit* **of *jogging* every morning**.

MODEL 2

Jack often flies off the handle.
He can't explain why. *(reason)* →
Jack can't explain *the reason* **for *flying* off the handle**.

1. I'm sure one can improve the design.
   There is a way to do it. *(way)*
2. It was necessary to pay the rent before the end of the week.
   She realised it. *(necessity)*
3. You want to make arrangements for them.
   You should know whether they are going to book a hotel room. *(intention)*
4. The costumes are made in a very skilled way.
   He has had a lot of experience. *(experience)*

5. The veils embroidered with flowers are beautiful.
   It requires a lot of skill. *(art)*
6. They let him down.
   They couldn't find any excuse. *(excuse)*
7. We wanted to measure it.
   We couldn't find a proper instrument. *(instrument)*
8. She was given an opportunity to take part in the competition.
   She couldn't but take it. *(chance)*
9. She objects when strict rules are imposed on her children.
   Her husband doesn't approve of her objection. *(objection)*
10. Margie knows how to entertain our guests.
    If you phone her she will tell you about it. *(idea)*
11. Alex wants Ann to visit him.
    She thinks there is no sense in it. *(sense)*
12. He is certain that he is right to say it.
    He has no hesitation in it. *(hesitation)*

7

Complete the sentences.
Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as attribute.
Use the proper preposition.

MODEL

The engineer couldn't find the right method...
The engineer couldn't find the right method **of *testing* the equipment**.

Use:

1. keeping water uncontaminated
2. working without a computer
3. cooking
4. dining out
5. receiving
6. being arrested
7. knowing the essential feature of the situation
8. practising it
9. not working
10. starting a new life
11. checking the engine
12. lying
13. learning
14. expanding their business

см. стр. 160

1. Have you got any idea...?
2. She expressed her objection...
3. They warned us of the dangers...
4. The smell... filled the air.
5. There was no chance... a large donation from the committtee.
6. His air... attracted everyone to him.
7. Everyone is aware of the necessity...
8. Her son gave an impression...
9. We had a chance...
10. He never denies himself the pleasure...
11. Where is the sense...?
12. People have different capacities...
13. All students learning a foreign language feel the need...
14. They have no hesitation...

8

Work in pairs.
Speak about different kinds of activities and art.
Say what skills or what kind of character each of them requires.
Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as attribute.

MODEL

– What does the art **of *teaching*** require, in your opinion?
– I think, the art **of *teaching*** requires tolerance and patience.

Or

– What do you think of the art **of *teaching***?
– I think the art **of *teaching*** first of all suggests knowing the subject you teach.

Speak about:

1. the art of teaching
2. the art of carving
3. the art of painting
4. the art of sewing
5. the art of dancing
6. the art of translating and interpreting
7. the art of writing poems

9

How can you realise your idea of *learning English or another foreign language?*

travelling abroad?
getting a best-seller?
starting a company of your own?
getting a good job?
buying a PC?
finding a pen-friend?
learning new skills of programming, drawing, etc.?
arranging a summer holiday in Europe?

Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase in your first clause.

MODEL

– If I want (one wants) to realise my (his) idea **of *going* to France** I/he should first learn French.

Or

– To realise my idea **of *going* to France** I am supposed to learn French first.

10

Work in pairs.
Have a talk with your partner about different ideas and express your likes and dislikes.
Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as attribute.

MODEL 1

– What do you think of the idea **of *going* to the theatre next week**?
– Why not? I like the idea **of *going out* at least once a fortnight**.

MODEL 2

– My dad hates the idea **of *having* a party too often**. And what about you?
– I dislike the idea **of *having* a big party**. Isn't it tiring?

см. стр. 162

Use:

like	adore	hate
love	dislike	detest

Speak about:

1. going to the cinema
2. buying a tour round Europe
3. writing a dissertation on time
4. going to a pop-concert
5. going to China
6. changing a monotonous job
7. watching TV from morn to night
8. going to a museum/ a picture gallery
9. going to a disco while taking exams
10. buying a nice Christmas present for your parents
11. reading all the novels by Dickens
12. translating *The Twilight* by Longfellow into Russian

11

Work in pairs.
Speak about different things you use at home.
Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as attribute to modify a concrete noun and express the purpose of the thing.

MODEL

– What is a kettle used for?
– A kettle is a container **for *boiling* water**.

Or

– What is a saucepan?
– A saucepan is a deep metal cooking pot **for *cooking* soup**.

Or

– What do we use a television for?
– A television is a device **for *watching* different programmes**.

см. стр. 163

Speak about:

A saucer, a cup/a mug, a glass, a knife, a coffee-maker, a chopper, a toaster, a broom, a mincer, an axe, a nail.

12

Read the English sentences.
Point out the gerundial construction used as attribute.
Choose the corresponding Russian sentence.

1. ***They had no objection to the house and the car being sold to their neighbours.***
   a) Они не возражали против дома и машины, которые продадут соседям.
   b) У них не было возражений против дома, а машину продадут соседям.
   c) У них не было возражений против того, чтобы дом и машину продали соседям.

2. ***Is there any sense in your having concealed the truth from her?***
   a) Есть ли смысл в том, что ты скрыл от нее правду?
   b) Есть ли смысл тебе скрывать от нее правду?
   c) Есть ли смысл в том, что ты скроешь от нее правду?

3. ***He was full of appologies for his son having troubled us.***
   a) Он очень извинялся за сына и за то, что он побеспокоил нас.
   b) Он очень извинялся за то, что его сын побеспокоил нас.
   c) Он очень извинялся, что его сын беспокоит нас.

4. ***We can understand your surprise at the exam being postponed.***
   a) Мы можем понять твое удивление по поводу того, что экзамен переносится.

см. стр. 164

b) Мы можем понять тебя и удивлены тем, что экзамен перенесли.
c) Нам понятно, что ты удивился из-за того, что экзамен перенесли.

13

Translate the sentences into English.
Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as attribute.

1. Не было возможности купить дешевый магнитофон.
2. Необходимость ухаживать за ним заставила ее найти сиделку.
3. Мне нравится его привычка молчать в такой ситуации.
4. Его вид, как будто он знает что-то важное, вызывал во мне беспокойство.
5. Есть ли смысл просить его об услуге?
6. Ученые изобрели новый метод обработки металла.
7. Ему угрожала опасность потерять работу.
8. У тебя есть какое-то представление о том, как играть это произведение?
9. У меня не было колебаний в том, чтобы помочь им.
10. Есть ли у вас возражения против того, чтобы вложить деньги в этот проект?
11. Они не хотели терять возможность встретиться с интересным писателем.
12. Вопрос об увеличении им зарплаты обсуждается уже месяц.
13. Искусство живописи — очень древний вид искусства.
14. Я не вижу способа уберечь его от неприятностей *(to keep somebody out of trouble)*.
15. Можешь представить себе удовольствие поехать в Лондон на полгода?
16. Возникает впечатление, что ее дочь моложе своих лет.
17. Есть опасность, что ты провалишь экзамен.
18. Это прекрасный прибор для настройки оборудования.

19. Есть ли надежда получать от них письма?
20. Он принял наши извинения за то, что получил деньги с опозданием.

14

Point out the gerund-attributes and the participle-attributes.
Prove your point of view by paraphrasing.
Make two columns of the two structures.
Read aloud each column paying attention to the stress pattern.
Translate into Russian.

MODEL

a talking girl — a girl who is talking.
Talking is a participle.

talking points — points for talking.
Talking is a gerund.

Gerund	Participle
'talking points вопросы для беседы	a 'talking 'girl беседующая девушка

a walking stick, a walking man, a walking track
a laughing stock, a laughing child, laughing gas
parting people, parting words, a parting speech, parting shot
a riding suit, a riding gentleman, riding breeches, a riding light
a swimming pool, a swimming bath, a swimming man, a swimming costume
teaching aids, a teaching hospital, a teaching machine
a hunting party, a hunting ground, a hunting season, a hunting suit
a writing desk, a writing pen, a writing hand
a driving licence, a driving wheel, a driving test, a driving school, a driving influence

15

Say whether the words in bold type are gerunds or participles.
Give your reasons.
Translate the sentences into Russian.

MODEL

The **wandering** look told what wreck had taken place in her.
wandering is a participle as it denotes the action of the modified noun.
(= the look that was wandering)
Этот **блуждающий** взгляд говорил о том, какое крушение надежд произошло в ней.

He took out his **shaving** set.
shaving is a gerund as it denotes the object of the modified noun. *(= a set for shaving)*
Он вытащил свой ***бритвенный*** прибор.
(= прибор для бритья)

1. The **blowing** wind was all I heard all night long.
2. Come with me into the **smoking** room.
3. This is the standard **travelling** kit *(снаряжение)*, he said.
4. He sat down on his **sleeping** bag and began to pull off his boots.
5. The young officer held his **riding** crop *(кнут)* against his right thigh like a field-marshal's baton.
6. At night before my **sleeping** drug soothed me I would imagine him going up my stairs.
7. The **beating** rain continuously knocked on my window.
8. Sam continued his **jumping** movement until he was near the fire.
9. The **rising** sun was already seen above the elms of the park.
10. The **crying** child was soothed by his nurse.
11. "No!" he replied firmly carefully extinguishing the **glowing** end of his cigar against the china of his wash-basin.
12. Her **riding** suit was all the fashion.
13. The men were all dressed in their **hunting** suits.

A man lives **by *believing* something: not by *debating* and *arguing* about many things.**

T. Carlyle

The appetite grows **by *eating*.***

English saying

6. THE ADVERBIAL MODIFIER

Like a noun the gerund in this function is always preceded by a preposition, the choice of which depends on the meaning of the adverbial modifier (the adverbial). Thus the gerund may be used as:

an adverbial modifier
- a) of manner
- b) of time
- c) of reason
- d) of attendant circumstances
- e) of concession
- f) of condition
- g) of purpose

a) THE ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF MANNER

In this syntactical function the gerund is preceded by the prepositions ***by*, *in*[1], *without*.**

You'd have shown your concern better ***by*** *sending for us before. (In what way? How?)*
Ты бы лучше проявил свою обеспокоенность, если бы послал сначала за нами./послав за нами сначала.

[1]An adverbial modifier of manner preceded by the preposition *in* is seldom used in colloquial speech.

The problem won't be solved ***by*** *policemen looking for charges and our not believing what people say.*
Вопрос не решить тем, что полиция будет искать виновных, а мы не будем верить тому, что говорят.

The day was spent ***in*** *packing. (How? In what way?)*[1]
День ушел на сборы. (День прошел в сборах.)

Aliena hurried past them ***without*** turning back.
(How? In what way?)
Алина быстро прошла мимо них, не оборачиваясь.

PEOPLE SAY

Fools grow **without *watering***.*

English proverb

❖ ❖ ❖

The best way to win an argument is to begin **by *being* right**.

Jill Ruckelhaus

❖ ❖ ❖

A grateful mind, **by *owing*** owes not,
But still pays, at once
Indebted and discharged.

Milton. Paradise Lost

[1]An adverbial modifier of manner preceded by the preposition *in* is seldom used in colloquial speech.

PEOPLE SAY

We become just **by *performing* just actions**, temperate **by *performing* temperate actions**, brave **by *performing* brave actions**.

Author Unidentified

❖ ❖ ❖

Life being very short and the quiet hours of it few,
We ought to waste none of them **in *reading* valueless books**.

J. Ruskin. Sesame and Lilies

❖ ❖ ❖

Married couples who love each other tell each other a thousand things **without *talking***.

Author Unidentified

❖ ❖ ❖

The woodcock is the only bird that can sing **without *using* its throat**. It sings **by *vibrating* its feathers**.

Author Unidentified

KEEP SMILING

RIDDLE

What, **by *losing* an eye**, has nothing left but a nose?

– If "noise" loses "i" it will have nothing left but "nose."

❖ ❖ ❖

"Doc," said he, "if there is anything the matter with me, don't frighten me half to death **by *giving* it a scientific name**. Just tell what it is in plain English."

"Well," said the doctor, "to be frank with you, you are just plain lazy."

"Thank you, doctor," sighed the patient with relief. "Now give me a scientific name for it, so I can go home and tell the missus."[1]

❖ ❖ ❖

SLANG

The teacher rebuked one of her youngest pupils for having used a slang expression. The girl excused herself **by *replying*** "My brother is very fond of saying it!" "Your brother ought to be more careful when speaking in the presence of the younger children," said the teacher. "Well, miss," said the child, "one can't stop boys from bringing slang into the house."

❖ ❖ ❖

There is a clever old miser who tries
Every method to e-con-omize.
He said with a wink,
"I save gallons of ink
By simply *not dotting* my i's."

[1]missus – wife

KEEP SMILING

WEAVING[1]

In the airman's lingo there is a slang word (now a term) for a plane in the rear protecting the tail of the forward aircraft **by *zigzagging* on the course *(weaving)***. The plane is called a "weaver". After some training exercise as a weaver the sergeant was asked by his commander: "Where did you learn to weave so well, O'Brien?"

"When a boy I used to follow my old man returning home on Saturday nights from bars."

[1]weave — *воен.* уклоняться
weaver — *воен.* истребитель сопровождения

III.6. EXERCISES

0

What prepositions precede the gerund used as adverbial modifier of manner?

1

Point out the gerund or the gerundial phrase used as adverbial modifier of manner.
Note the preposition preceding the adverbial modifier of manner.
Translate the sentences into Russian.
Pay attention to the ways of rendering the adverbial modifier of manner in Russian.

MODEL

The afternoon was spent **in** ***discussing*** **the script**.
День ушел ***на обсуждение*** сценария.
День провели, ***обсуждая*** сценарий.

1. You can spoil the cake by adding too much sugar.
2. He managed to make calculations without using a calculator.
3. A vacuum cleaner removes dirt and dust by sucking it up.
4. Can you revise the rules for the final exam without learning them by heart?
5. Mature students in Britain can get a grant by applying to the local government.
6. The teacher tried to awaken the children's civic pride by telling them about the history of the country.
7. In doing the shopping and cooking she passed the day.

8. You will never solve your problems by trying to be in three places at once.
9. The day was spent in making calls.
10. She started to learn Spanish by listening to tapes.
11. The weekend was spent at home in watching video films.
12. Can't you speak without raising your voice?
13. It's impossible to unlock the drawer without using this key.
14. So many days were spent in lying on the beach and doing nothing.
15. By comparing the weather in different seasons they build up a picture of what is going on.
16. I stay in shape by exercising and not eating fattening foods.
17. Harry got the address of this college by looking it up in a college directory.
18. She spent the morning in writing letters to her friends.

2

Paraphrase the sentences.
Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as adverbial modifier of manner.
Choose the proper preposition.

MODEL

They packed their things in the morning. →
The morning was spent **in *packing* things**.

He did a repair job from time to time and managed to save some money. →
He managed to save some money **by *doing* a repair job**.

1. It will take them two days to put the refrigerators into containers. *(Two days...)*
2. Give your friend a call and you will make it up.
3. Read English books and you are sure to enrich your vocabulary.

4. Don't interfere with their family matters and you may help them in this way.
5. He spent the whole day looking after the flowers in his garden. *(His whole day...)*
6. Wet the sponge and you can easily rub it off.
7. Read the text to yourself and you will get the main idea.
8. Face me, please. Otherwise you can't understand a word.
9. Lucy spent hours daydreaming. *(Hours...)*
10. Ann watched television and improved her listening comprehension.
11. Get regular exercise and you can improve your physical condition.

3

Work in pairs.
Ask your partner how a child can provoke his parents to punish him.
Your partner is supposed to use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as adverbial modifier of manner.
Use the suggested variants.

MODEL

– How can a child provoke his parents to punish him?
– I think, he can do it **by *making* too much noise**.

Suggested variants:

1. to say bad words
2. to idle
3. to meddle with his parents' talk
4. to fall behind at school
5. not to tidy up the room
6. to steal the biscuits from the biscuit jar
7. to cry too often
8. to break the vase
9. to mistreat the cat
10. to get a poor mark
11. not to do his homework
12. to beat his little brother, etc.

4

Imagine you are going
1) ***to do a thorough turn out,***
2) ***to decorate the flat,***
3) ***to have a birthday party,***
4) ***to spend your holiday at the seaside/abroad.***

Tell your groupmates how you are going to spend the day. Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as adverbial modifier of manner.

MODEL 1

I am going to spend the morning **in *doing* the washing**.

Suggested variants:

1. to dust the furniture
2. to beat the carpets and rugs
3. to vacuum the rooms
4. to polish the floor, etc.

MODEL 2

I am going to spend the weekend **in *papering* the walls**.

Suggested variants:

1. to paper the walls in the kitchen/the living-room/the bedroom
2. to plaster and to whitewash the ceiling
3. to paint the walls in the bathroom
4. to paint the doors, etc.

MODEL 3

I am going to spend some time **in *doing* the shopping**.

Suggested variants:

1. to make a list of foodstuffs to buy
2. to make salads
3. to cook a chicken
4. to dress up
5. to do some shopping
6. to make a birthday cake
7. to lay the table, etc.

MODEL 4

I am going to spend the morning **in *sightseeing***.

Suggested variants:

1. to walk on the beach
2. to have a drink in a bar
3. to draw water-colours
4. to climb the mountain
5. to lie in the sun
6. to read an interesting book
7. to visit one's friends, etc.

5

Speak about people's manners you like or dislike. Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as adverbial modifier of manner preceded by the preposition *without*.

MODEL

I like my friend's manner of listening to me **without *saying* a word**.

Or

I like the way my friend listens to me **without *saying* a word**.

Suggested variants:

1. one's manner of telling jokes *(not to smile)*
2. one's manner of reciting poems *(not to imitate famous actors)*
3. the way one sings *(not to be accompanied on the piano or guitar)*
4. the way one imitates his friends *(not to make a fool out of them)*
5. the way one can pronounce tongue-twisters *(ten times; not to stop)*
6. one's manner of talking *(not to put on airs), etc.*

6

Say what one can/can't do:

A. 1) ***without giving some previous thought***
2) ***without making a single mistake***
3) ***without using a single nail***
4) ***without standing on the stool***
5) ***without stopping***

см. стр. 177

Suggested variants:

1. to guess a crossword puzzle
2. to get an excellent mark
3. to build a house
4. to dust the top shelf
5. to run two kilometers, etc.

B. 1) ***by using a PC***
2) ***by moving the furniture***
3) ***by opening a small window***
4) ***by using a hairdryer***
5) ***by saving enough money***

Suggested variants:

1. to send an e-mail
2. to change the room round
3. to air the room
4. to dry one's hair
5. to buy a country house, etc.

7

Read the English sentences.
Point out the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of manner.
Choose the corresponding Russian sentence.

1. ***The problem can be solved by all the relatives lending them some money.***
   a) Проблему можно решить тем, что все родственники дадут им взаймы деньги.
   b) Проблему можно решить с помощью всех родственников, если они дадут им взаймы деньги.
   c) Все родственники, которые дают им взаймы деньги, могут решить проблему.

2. ***He was rescued by his neighbour calling the police.***
   a) Его спасла полиция, которую вызвал сосед.
   b) Его спас сосед, вызвавший полицию.
   c) Его спасло то, что сосед вызвал полицию.

3. ***The project was improved by the designer using a new method.***
   a) Проект был усовершенствован тем, что дизайнер использовал новый метод.
   b) Проект был усовершенствован, и дизайнером был использован новый метод.
   c) Дизайнер усовершенствовал проект и использовал новый метод.

8

Translate the sentences into English.
Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as adverbial modifier of manner.

1. Космический корабль создали, используя современные технологии.
2. Нам удалось получить нужную информацию, не входя в контакт с экспертами *(to get into contact)*.
3. Остаток жизни он провел, играя в гольф и развлекаясь с друзьями.
4. Ты мог бы разговаривать с ним, не обзываясь *(to call names)*.
5. Он не умеет жить, не тратя денег налево и направо *(to spend money left and right)*.
6. Можно легко все запомнить, записывая лекции.
7. Невозможно тратить весь день на сборы.
8. Он всегда говорит, не повышая голоса *(to raise one's voice)*.
9. Попытайтесь решить задачу, используя эту формулу.
10. Они обычно проводят утро, обсуждая самые насущные проблемы.
11. Трудно достичь цели, полагаясь на других.
12. Ты можешь есть, не вытирая рот рукой *(to wipe one's mouth with the back of one's hand)*?
13. Весь день он провел, ремонтируя мебель.

Eureka! (I have found!)

Archimedes.
On *making* a discovery

You can't cook a hare **before *catching* him**.*

English proverb

b) THE ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF TIME

Due to the meaning of the prepositions preceding the gerund it may indicate

a) priority ***(after, on/upon, since)***;
b) simultaneity ***(in, at)*** and
c) posterity ***(before)***.

a) ***After*** *taking a few* steps *about the room* Tom blinked and looked away.
(= After he took a few steps about the room, Tom blinked and looked away.)
Сделав несколько шагов по комнате, Том моргнул и посмотрел в сторону.

On *recognizing the servant* I whistled softly to him.[1]
(= When I recognized the servant, I...)
Узнав слугу, я тихонько ему свистнул.

I've called him several times ***since*** *coming home.*
Я уже звонил ему несколько раз с тех пор, как вернулся домой.

[1]In this case *on* denotes *immediate priority*.

b) ***In*** *crossing the street* one should be careful.
Переходя улицу, надо быть осторожным.
(При переходе улицы...)

At *hearing some steps* Robert turned round.[1]
Услышав какие-то шаги, Роберт повернулся.

c) She stared at him for several seconds in disbelief, ***before*** *speaking to Tom*.
(= ...before she spoke to him.)
Не веря своим глазам, она несколько секунд смотрела на Тома, прежде чем заговорила с ним.

In this function the gerund may be replaced by participle I:
Hearing *the steps* Robert turned round.
While ***crossing*** *the street* one should be careful.
Having sent *them a telex* we expected them to come.
In this case there can be no preposition, but the conjunctions *while* or *when* are possible.

PEOPLE SAY

We cannot tell the precise moment when friendship is formed, as **in *filling* a vessel drop by drop**, there is at last a drop which makes it run over, so in a series of kindnesses there is at last one which makes the heart run over.

J. Boswell. Life of Johnson

❖ ❖ ❖

In *taking* revenge a man is but equal to his enemy,
But **in *passing* it over** he is superior.

F. Bacon

[1]In this case *at* denotes *immediate priority*.

PEOPLE SAY

On *getting* used to pessimism, you feel it is just as agreeable as optimism.

Author Unidentified

❖ ❖ ❖

In *giving* freedom to a slave, we assure freedom to the free, – honorable alike in what we give and what we preserve.

A. Lincoln

KEEP SMILING

"Smith, how do you like drinks?"

"**Before *answering*** I'd like to know, sir, if it is a question or an offer?"

❖ ❖ ❖

"I notice that **in *telling* about that fish you caught** you vary the size of it for different listeners!"

"Yes, I never tell a man more than I think he will believe."

❖ ❖ ❖

NO HAUL

The sailor's wife addressed the psychiatrist: "I'm worried about my husband."

"What's wrong with him?"

"**Since *retiring* from the Navy** he's been boating in the bath-tub in the bathroom fishing in the water in the bath-tub."

"And why are you so excited?"

"The trouble is he has no haul. And I myself am quite anxious to have some fresh fish for dinner."

KEEP SMILING

JAMES COOK AND HIS CONTRIBUTION TO RUSSIAN

The famous English sea traveler J. Cook had (of course unwillingly) his name connected with a Russian word "кукиш" meaning "fig." The story goes that Captain Cook had among his crew a Russian sailor who, **on *returning* back to Russia** after the fabulous voyages surprised with his tales about Cook his listeners who exclaimed: "Ай да Кук, ишь ты!" (What a smart man, that Cook, well I never!) Hence the word. Maybe it's not true to fact but funny enough.

❖ ❖ ❖

THEORY AND PRACTICE

After *working* with a team of experts to bring Apollo 13 back from space a mathematician went home in his car but went astray in the city suburbs and had to ask a pedestrian for directions home.

When he told his family about his wanderings his schoolboy son commented: "Dad, I'm glad those astronauts in space don't know about your doings."

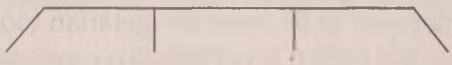
❖ ❖ ❖

There was an Old Man of the South,
Who had an immoderate mouth;
But **in *swallowing* a dish**,
That was quite full of fish,
He was choked, that Old Man of the South.

III.6. EXERCISES

0

What prepositions precede the gerund used as adverbial modifier of time?



1

A. Point out the gerund or the gerundial phrase used as adverbial modifier of time.
Note the prepositions preceding the adverbial modifier of time and say whether the gerund following it denotes priority, simultaneity or posterity.
Translate the sentences into Russian.
Note the way of rendering the gerund in Russian.

MODEL

Before *giving* **him a call** think the whole matter over.
Прежде чем *позвонить* **ему**, все обдумай.
Перед тем как...
(posterity)

After *having* **a talk with him** give me a ring.
После *разговора* **с ним** позвони мне.
После того как **ты** *поговоришь* **с ним, ...**
Поговорив **с ним, ...**
(priority)

At *seeing* **the sweets in her mother's hands** the girl smiled.
Когда **девочка** *увидела* **конфеты в руках у матери**, она лыбнулась.
Увидев...,
(simultaneity)

см. стр. 184

1. After coming back home she had a snack and then a nap.
2. Switch on the signal before turning left.
3. He stopped talking immediately on hearing her voice.
4. Since getting his last letter we haven't heard from him.
5. In crossing the street look out.
6. At seeing the policeman he ran downstairs to open the door.
7. Before sending her daughter to Germany she asked her friends to look after her there.
8. The Hindu vegetarian impressed me and after talking with him I decided to become a vegetarian too.
9. Think twice before accepting this proposal.
10. At hearing his father's steps he rushed out to meet him.
11. After failing his first year exam at university, he moved away to a small town in the South.
12. Since riding a horse when a boy he hasn't done it again.
13. On finding the right paper she got the necessary information.

B. Choose the sentences where a gerund used as adverbial modifier of time indicates 1) *priority,* 2) *simultaneity,* 3) *posterity.*

Put the numbers of the sentences you have chosen in the corresponding box.

1	2	3
priority	**simultaneity**	**posterity**
	1	

1. At seeing him in Moscow I could hardly recognize him.
2. On entering the sports club I saw my old friend.
3. Since selling his dog her grandpa has never had any pets.
4. Before digging his garden he bought some rare kinds of roses and apple-trees.
5. In telling tales about his pals he was never ashamed.
6. After being warned of possible danger they may try to avoid it.
7. On nearing his enemy he felt his heart leap with terror.
8. Since working in a shop she has changed several jobs.

2

Paraphrase the sentences.
Replace participle I by an adverbial modifier of time expressed by a gerund or a gerundial phrase.

MODEL

While ***crossing*** **that bridge** one has to walk and not drive. →
In ***crossing*** **that bridge** one has to walk, and not drive.

1. Turning the light on he saw a stranger in the room.
2. Hearing the song she remembered her childhood.
3. While watching the comedy they laughed a lot.
4. Having heated the boiler she took a bath.
5. When listening to the radio he was interested mostly in news programmes.
6. Having found the house he rang the doorbell.
7. Switching off the television he went to bed.
8. Having taken the medicine the old woman felt much better.
9. While talking with him she felt excited.
10. Having thought for a moment the man agreed to lend me a hand.
11. Seeing that the strap of her roller skate was loose she bent down and tightened it.

3

Translate the sentences into Russian.
Note the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of time.
Note that the nominal element of the construction denoting the doer of the action doesn't coincide with the subject of the sentence.

MODEL

Before *his going* to the club *she* asked him to come back as soon as possible.
Перед тем как *он пошел* в клуб, *она* попросила его вернуться как можно скорее.

1. Before her being sent a fax they usually send her a contract by mail.
2. After Tim's meeting Leslie in Africa she travelled all over the world.
3. On my coming back from work my wife gave me a strange letter.
4. Since my seeing him when I was a little boy he has never appeared.
5. After Nick travelling to Europe his life changed a lot.
6. Before our buying a big black poodle they offered us a toy poodle.
7. After their getting divorced their elder son married and lived on his own.
8. You can take him for a long walk to get some peace and quiet after his working on his PC for hours on end.
9. Since their going on expeditions to the Urals he has been to Mount Everest twice.

4

Say what you haven't done *since...*
Denote the starting point of an action by an adverbial modifier of time expressed by the preposition *since* + *a gerund, a gerundial phrase* or *a gerundial construction*.

см. стр. 187

MODEL

I haven't seen my classmate **since**...
I haven't seen my classmate **since her *calling* on me a year ago**.

Suggested variants:

1. to do one's morning exercises
2. to take medicine
3. to bathe in the Black Sea
4. to write an essay
5. to pick up mushrooms
6. to visit one's relatives
7. to go to a restaurant
8. to travel by train
9. to go on holiday
10. to go to the dentist
11. to borrow money
12. to go out

5

Work in pairs.
Say what you would recommend your partner to do *before/after/on/in/at doing something.*
Use a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of time preceded by the prepositions.
If necessary use a perfect gerund to emphasize the idea of priority.
Let your partner reply using a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of time.

MODEL

– I think you should do your morning exercises **before *having* breakfast**.
– Well, that's a good idea. I usually do it **after *having* a light breakfast**.

Suggested variants:

1. to have a big breakfast
2. to go to bed
3. to do one's home assignment
4. to read up for an exam
5. to dust the furniture
6. to buy a new car
7. to choose one's career
8. to leave the house
9. to have a shower
10. to book an air ticket
11. to go to a play
12. to listen to an English tape

6

Work in pairs.
Imagine that you are a caller.
Ask your partner what he usually does *before/after/on giving a call to someone*.
Make up a complete sentence and use an adverbial modifier of time expressed by a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction.

MODEL

– What do you usually do **before *making a call* to someone**?
– **Before *giving* a call** I usually check the number.

1. **before**	making a call to somebody? making a call from a telephone box? hanging up?
2. **after**	dialling someone's phone number? your call being answered?
3. **on**	hearing the ringing tone which means that the line is free? hearing engaged tone? dialling the wrong number? taking up the receiver? answering the telephone? realising that the telephone is dead?
4. **at**	hearing that one wants to speak to your mother/father/sister, etc.? hearing that the person you are calling is out at the moment? not hearing the person you are calling? hearing that the person you are calling is on the other line? hearing some background noise interfering?

Suggested variants:

1. to check the number
2. to lift the receiver/to take up the receiver/to pick up the receiver
3. to listen for the dialing tone (a continuous purring)
4. to redial
5. to dial carefully and allow the dial return freely
6. to wait for another tone
7. to try again a few minutes later
8. to replace the receiver at the end of the call/to hang up
9. to drop a coin piece into the slot
10. to wait until one's call is answered
11. to give one's name
12. to ask one to put him/her on the line
13. to ask one to hold on for a moment
14. to say "May I speak to...?"
    "Can I speak to...?
    "May I have a word with...?"
15. to ask to speak up
16. to leave a message
17. to ask one to take a message
18. to call back later
19. to apologize for dialing the wrong number/having troubled (bothered) a person

7

Read the English sentences.
Point out the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of time.
Choose the corresponding Russian sentence.

1. ***After his taking a few steps towards her she looked up and spoke again.***
   a) После того как он сделал несколько шагов в ее сторону, она подняла голову и снова заговорила.
   b) После его нескольких шагов в ее сторону она подняла голову и снова заговорила.

c) После него, когда он сделал несколько шагов в ее сторону, она подняла голову и снова заговорила.

2. ***Before Jane taking her final decision to dance in the ballet her part was given to another ballet dancer.***
   a) До этого Джейн приняла окончательное решение танцевать в балете, но ее роль была передана другой балерине.
   b) До того как Джейн приняла окончательное решение танцевать в балете, ее роль была передана другой балерине.
   c) До Джейн принятие окончательного решения танцевать в балете было возложено на другую балерину.

3. ***After their testing the tool it was sent to the exhibition.***
   a) После проверки прибор был отправлен на выставку.
   b) После них прибор проверили и отправили на выставку.
   c) После того как они проверили прибор, его отправили на выставку.

4. ***Before the car starting I had to ask to give me a push.***
   a) Прежде чем машина завелась, я вынужден был попросить, чтобы меня подтолкнули.
   b) Перед стартом машины я вынужден был попросить, чтобы меня подтолкнули.
   c) Сначала машина пошла, но я вынужден был попросить, чтобы меня подтолкнули.

8

Translate the sentences into English.
Use a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of time.

1. Получив записку от друга, он сразу позвонил ему.
2. Когда я услышал знакомый голос, я почувствовал волнение.
3. Перед поездкой на юг купи новые очки от солнца *(a new pair of sunglasses)* и купальник.

4. Увидев букет цветов, она все поняла.
5. С тех пор как мы посмотрели этот спектакль, мы не были в этом театре.
6. Когда поднимаешься в горы, надо быть очень осторожным.
7. После того как он изучил английский, она давала ему уроки французского.
8. Переехав в деревню, она пошла учиться в сельскую школу.
9. При заполнении анкеты *(to fill in a questionnaire)* надо давать точную информацию.
10. Когда я вижу их вместе, я радуюсь.
11. С момента окончания им Лондонского университета *(to complete a degree at the University of London)* я видел его в Лондоне дважды.
12. Когда она готовится к концертам *(to practise for concerts)*, она проводит много времени на репетициях.
13. Перед сном я люблю выпить горячего молока.
14. Мы очень устали после поездки на озеро.
15. Встав на стул, она повесила *(to put up)* занавеску.
16. Прежде чем делать ремонт в квартире, продумайте интерьер *(the interior)*.

Don't break the law not **for fear of *breaking* the spirit of the law** but **for fear of *being punished***.

Author Unidentified

c) THE ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF REASON

It is introduced by the prepositions ***because of, for, from, for fear of, on account of, through, owing to***.

What would people think of me ***for*** *letting her go*?
(= What would people think of me because I let her go?)
Что бы подумали обо мне люди из-за того, что я отпустила ее?

He profoundly neglected the Press – not with the neglect which grows on writers ***from*** *reading reviews of their own works*.
Он полностью игнорировал прессу, но не так, как игнорируют ее некоторые писатели из-за того, что читают (в них) отзывы на свои собственные работы.

She and Penny didn't even mention her in Edward's presence ***for fear of*** *turning the knife in the wound*.
Ни она, ни Пенни даже не упоминали ее в присутствии Эдуарда, так как боялись сыпать соль на рану.

PEOPLE SAY

We quarrel with no man **for *being* a foreigner**.

Author Unidentified

PEOPLE SAY

Our Constitution is to be celebrated **not for *being* old, but for *being* young**.

Author Unidentified

KEEP SMILING

A fisherman got such a reputation **for *stretching* the truth** that he bought a pair of scales and insisted on weighing every fish he caught, in the presence of a witness. One day a doctor borrowed the fisherman's scales to weigh a new-born baby. The baby weighed forty-seven pounds.

❖ ❖ ❖

ANOTHER VARIANT

The chairman of a court-martial board said: "I see, Private Dennis, you are back **for *fighting* with your wife WAC[1] sergeant**. Again liquor?"

"No, sir. She licked me this time."

[1]WAC – *ам. воен.* Women's Army Corps – женская военная вспомогательная служба.

KEEP SMILING

The boxer returned to his dressing-room looking drawn and haggard **for *having had* a terrific beating in the ring**. He felt absolutely done in, and looked it. He opened his eyes when the promoter approached.

"Hard lines, Jack," said the promoter as he gazed down at his battered charge; "but I've got good news for you!"

"Well, what's the good news?"

"I've been lucky enough to fix a return match for you!"

❖ ❖ ❖

RELATIVE VIRTUE

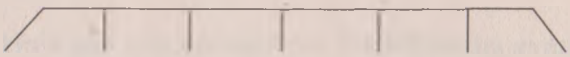
A certain shopkeeper was nicknamed "little rascal" both **for *being* of short stature**[1] **and for *being* not over-scrupulous in his dealings**. A stranger asked him whether he could tell him how he had come by such a nickname.

"Most willingly," said "little rascal"; "I have been given the name to single me out from the rest of my trade, for who ever doubts their being all great rascals."

[1]stature – рост.

III.6. EXERCISES

0 **What prepositions precede the gerund used as adverbial modifier of reason?**



1 **Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of reason.**
Note the prepositions preceding the adverbial modifier of reason.
Translate the sentences into Russian.

MODEL

What will you do with him **for** ***deceiving*** **her**?
Что ты сделаешь с ним **за то, что** он ***обманывает*** **ее**? (**из-за того, что**...)

1. He can't understand her for not telling him the truth.
2. They didn't mention it for fear of offending him.
3. I couldn't explain anything to him because of him being very nervous.
4. The administration refused to pay the salary on account of the miners' being on strike.
5. They cancelled the train owing to the railway being blocked.
6. Fred got into trouble through his competitor cheating him.
7. He retired last month because of his mother being very ill.
8. The child looked neglected and unloved but not only from being dressed in rags.
9. The witness says that he couldn't let the man in on account of his being a stranger.

10. Because of his spending a bomb *(to spend a bomb on... – тратить очень много денег на...)* on restaurants and taxies his family couldn't save any money.
11. Mary couldn't prepare dinner for having no food at home.
12. Drugs are condemned by society for being a great danger.
13. We managed to solve the problem because of Sid and his parents supporting us.
14. He felt awkward for being late at work every morning.
15. She hid the fact from her parents for fear of being punished.

2

Paraphrase the sentences.
Use a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of reason.

MODEL

They didn't arrive in Madrid **because they had missed the train.** →
They didn't arrive in Madrid **for *having missed* the train.**

1. He didn't find his wallet as he couldn't remember where he had put it.
2. Ann's husband couldn't buy a house because he went bankrupt.
3. Mary was often late for work because her alarm-clock was out of order.
4. Frank managed to find a good job for his ex-boss gave him good advice.
5. They didn't keep a dog because they were scared that it may hurt their child.
6. He has good information about hotels because he always stays in hotels when travelling.
7. Ellen always arrives on time as her husband gives her a lift.
8. Pete had an earache because he had a cold in the head.

9. Very few students answered the question but not because it was too difficult.
10. John didn't come to the party for he had to look after his granny.
11. Simon was fired because he was completely incompetent.
12. She didn't like to go out in the evenings as she was afraid to meet a drunkard.

3

How can you account for the following events? Use an adverbial modifier of reason expressed by a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction. Choose the proper preposition:
for, for fear of, because of, owing to, on account of.

Suggested variants:

1. to have no car
2. to see the play
3. to miss the train
4. to have a car accident
5. to be very busy
6. to have a headache
7. to be not well paid
8. to feel exhausted
9. to be ill *(the dentist)*
10. to be out of order
11. to be conservative
12. not to keep one's promise

1. Laura went to bed early.
2. Fred is pressed for money.
3. John has to walk to the supermarket.
4. Andrew refused to go to the play.
5. Nora failed to come on time.
6. Charles failed to have an appointment with the dentist.
7. Claudia failed to give her friend a ring.
8. Mr. Black couldn't go on holiday.
9. Dick can't be very much help to his son.
10. She can't put up with noisy kids.
11. Harry didn't get a telephone call from his partner.
12. He's slow to respond to new ideas.

4

Reply to the following questions.
Use an adverbial modifier of reason expressed by a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction.

I.

What	do	elderly people	avoid to do	*for fear of*	*slipping on ice?*
		weak people			*falling down?*
	does	a coward			*getting cold?*
					catching cold?
					being deceived?
					being robbed?
					being beaten?
				for	*(them) not being able to pay back?*
				because of	*them being too heavy?*

Suggested variants:

1. to go out alone (in winter)
2. to do the shopping
3. to borrow money
4. to lift heavy things
5. to put up curtains
6. to let a room to a stranger
7. to fight a hooligan

II.

Why are little children easily frightened	when you switch off the light?
	when you leave them alone?
	when they watch a horror film?
	when you teach them to ride a bike?
	when you teach them to swim?

Suggested variants:

1. for being afraid to stay alone
2. for being afraid of staying in a dark room
3. for being afraid of seeing horrible monsters
4. for being afraid of falling down
5. for being afraid of drowning

5

Read the English sentences.
Point out the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of reason.
Choose the corresponding Russian sentence.

1. ***The child couldn't sleep for his parents having a party.***
   a) Ребенок не спал, так как у родителей были гости.
   b) Ребенок не спал, чтобы родители провели время с гостями.
   c) Ребенок не спал из-за гостей, которые были у родителей.

2. ***Owing to her spending a lot of money on clothes her husband went bankrupt.***
   a) Благодаря ей и большим затратам на одежду ее муж разорился.
   b) Из-за того, что она тратила много денег на одежду, ее муж разорился.
   c) Благодаря ей затраты на одежду были велики, и ее муж разорился.

3. ***Because of the course being long they refused to take it.***
   a) Так как курсы были продолжительными, они отказались посещать их.
   b) Из-за курсов, которые были продолжительными, они отказались принять это.
   c) Они отказались посещать продолжительные курсы.

4. ***On account of the committee having supported the company the staff got out of that difficult situation.***
   a) Из-за поддержки комитета фирма и ее сотрудники вышли из трудного положения.
   b) Так как комитет поддержал фирму, ее сотрудники вышли из трудного положения.
   c) Благодаря комитету, поддерживающему фирму, сотрудники вышли из трудного положения.

6

Translate the sentences into English.
Use a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of reason.

1. Он никогда не ходил в этот клуб, так как входная плата *(the cover charge)* была очень высокой.
2. Я не ездил к ним, потому что не находил времени для этого.
3. Они не хотели слушать ее бесконечные истории о романах, потому что у них не хватало терпения *(to have the patience)*.
4. Дик не любил скоростные *(fast)* автомобили, так как боялся попасть в аварию *(to have an accident)*.
5. Его никогда не приглашали на обед, так как он был дурно воспитан.
6. Мистер Лемон был назначен менеджером компании, так как он заботился *(look after)* только об ее интересах.
7. Она купила в аптеке аспирин, так как боялась заболеть.
8. Она не любила проводить вечера дома с мужем, потому что он все время валялся на диване *(a real coach potato)*.
9. Нам посоветовали купить эту путевку *(a boat excursion)* на острова, так как в стоимость путевки входил *(to be included on the excursion)* и обед.
10. Его родители не хотят покупать ему ролики *(rollerblades)* из страха, что он упадет и сломает ногу.
11. Ее сестра никогда не путешествует морем, потому что боится, что ее укачает *(to feel sick/to be seasick)*.
12. У него вчера была небольшая авария *(to have a little accident)*, так как он проехал на красный свет *(to drive on a red light)*.
13. Пришлось ехать в аэропорт на такси, потому что у мужа сломалась *(to break down)* машина.

We have no more right to consume happiness **without *producing*** it than to consume wealth **without *producing*** it.

G. B. Shaw, Candida

d) THE ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF ATTENDANT CIRCUMSTANCES

An adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances is preceded by the prepositions ***without, besides, instead of***.

You went out ***without*** *telling me anything.*
(= You went out and didn't tell me anything).
Ты вышел и мне ничего не сказал.

He spoke for a long time ***without*** *coming to the heart of the matter.*
(= ...and/but didn't come to the heart of the matter)
Он говорил долго и/,но не затронул сути дела.

Mr K. was on the Guards Reserve ***besides*** *being in the police.*
Мистер К. числился в резерве гвардии и кроме того он служил в полиции.

If I hadn't got a cold, I'd be working ***instead of*** *lying here in bed.*
Если бы не простуда, я бы (сейчас) работал, а не лежал бы в постели. (...вместо того чтобы лежать...)

PEOPLE SAY

He who decides a case **without *hearing* the other side**, though he decides justly, cannot be considered just.

L. A. Seneca

❖ ❖ ❖

Diplomacy is thought to be the art of jumping into troubled waters **without *making* a splash.**

Author Unidentified

❖ ❖ ❖

The use of travelling is to regulate imagination by reality, and **instead of *thinking* how things may be**, to see them as they are.

S. Johnson,
Boswell's Life of Dr. Johnson

KEEP SMILING

TOUCHING SCENE

A little boy was playing near his father absorbed with reading a newspaper on the bench in the city park.

"Look, daddy, a plane!" he shouted.

"All right, all right," said his father **without *interrupting* his *reading***, "but don't touch it with your hands."

KEEP SMILING

WONDERFUL HENS

"Talking of hens," said the American visitor, "reminds me of an old hen that my father once had. She used to hatch out anything from tennis balls to lemons. One day she sat on a piece of ice and hatched out a litre of hot water."

"That's nothing," said the Irishman. "I remember a hen that my mother once had. They had been feeding her by mistake on sawdust **instead of *giving* her oatmeal**. Well, she laid twelve eggs and sat on them, and when they hatched, eleven of the chickens had wooden legs and the twelfth was a wood-pecker!"

❖ ❖ ❖

A doctor was called in to see a rather testy aristocrat.

"Well, sir, what's the matter?" he asked cheerfully.

"That, sir," growled the patient, "is for you to find out."

"I see," said the doctor thoughtfully. "Well, if you'll excuse me for an hour or so I'll go along and fetch a friend of mine – a veterinarian. He is the only chap I know who can make a diagnosis **without *asking* questions**."

❖ ❖ ❖

TEACHER: What is a circle?

PUPIL: A circle is a line which meets its other end **without *ending***.

KEEP SMILING

A LITTER

A boy has been displaying to his friend his gift of shaping toy animals out of orange peel; he succeeds in making out of it a surprisingly life-like pig. His friend tries to do the same but fails. After destroying some oranges and strewing the table with orange peel, he exclaims. "I can't make him!" "Why!" says the skilled one glancing at the mess on the table, "you have done more; **instead of *making* one pig** you have created a regular litter."

❖ ❖ ❖

TOO SEVERE

Two tankmen discussed the recent incident in the unit.

"Don't you think, Joe, that the Old Man has trown the book at the guy for a minor thing? After all all he did was only to enter the office **without *knocking*.**"

"Yes, but he entered it on his tank!"

III.6. EXERCISES

0 **What prepositions precede the gerund used as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances?**

1 **Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.**
Note the prepositions preceding the adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.
Translate the sentences into Russian.

MODEL

He came to see us **without** ***being invited***.
Он приходил к нам **без** ***приглашения***./
..., **при этом** **его никто** ***не приглашал***.

1. Instead of going straight to work, he took a bus into town.
2. The man left the restaurant without paying his bill.
3. He can get into financial difficulties without borrowing too much money.
4. She usually leaves the party without saying good-bye to anyone.
5. Instead of doing nothing go and help your little brother.
6. Tom and Emma got married without telling any of their friends.
7. Instead of going to a restaurant we ate at home.
8. The decision was made without anybody asking him.

9. Instead of turning into the lane the driver dropped me off at traffic lights.
10. The sportsman ran five kilometers without stopping.
11. The boys left through the window without anybody seeing them.
12. Instead of making an effort to do the work he usually gives up before he begins.
13. He wants to work in his study without his children disturbing him.
14. Instead of watching horror films revise for your exam.
15. One can hardly get there without getting stuck in a traffic jam.
16. Instead of obeying him you keep arguing with him.
17. Instead of reaching India he landed on an island unknown to Europeans.
18. Besides being a good musician he is a chess champion.

2

Paraphrase the sentences.
Use a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.

MODEL

1. The boy was playing with his friend **and didn't pay attention to his little sister who was crying.** →

   The boy was playing with his friend **without** ***paying attention*** **to his little sister who was crying.**

2. You'd better buy a return ticket **and not a one-way ticket.** →

   Instead of ***buying*** **a one-way ticket** you'd better buy a return ticket.

1. You can't get to this place and not change for another train.
2. I don't want to tip a porter and I'd rather ask my husband to carry my luggage.

3. Stay with us and don't reserve a room at a hotel.
4. I didn't have my washing machine repaired and decided to buy a new one.
5. Try and use water-colours and not ink.
6. Buy a pair of sandals and don't wear high-heeled shoes in summer.
7. The boss says that we'd better work hard and not raise the question of the pay rise.
8. You should have a big breakfast and not just a bite *(to have a bite)*.
9. Most Russians eat in and don't go out.
10. Americans like to eat out and not cook at home.

3

Join the sentences.
Use a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances to show a parallel action happening at the same time as the action denoted by the finite verb.
Use the proper preposition preceding the adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.

MODEL

Nick agreed with her.
He didn't argue with her. →

Nick agreed with her **without *arguing***.

1. Albert brought us a bottle of French wine.
   He didn't take the money for it.
2. He asked to give him advice.
   He didn't complain about his parents.
3. She graduated with honours.
   She never failed an exam.
4. John and Sally coped with all their problems cheerfully.
   No one helped them.

5. The team won the game.
   They didn't have a good trainer.
6. The soldier obeyed the officer.
   He didn't argue.
7. The film star agreed to play the part in the new film.
   He didn't hesitate.
8. He gave her a big hug.
   He didn't realise what it meant for her.
9. She returned home.
   Nobody judged her.

4

Read the sentences given below.
Say what a person did or is supposed to do instead of doing something else.
Use the preposition *instead of + a gerund/a gerundial phrase* as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.

MODEL

Lucy didn't go to a disco.
She went to a play. →
Instead of *going* to a disco Lucy went to a play.

1. Don't say: There's no alternative.
   Say: We have no alternative.
2. Paul didn't say anything to her.
   He just nodded in agreement.
3. He didn't tell us anything about his famous ancestors.
   He gave us a book about them.
4. The clerk is supposed to instruct customers.
   He tells them to fill in the paper.
5. Mother didn't buy Bobby an ice.
   She bought him a tin of cola.
6. The girl didn't try the dress on.
   She just asked the shop assistant to wrap the purchase.
7. They didn't look after the children properly.
   They went out four times a week.

8. The boy didn't put on a warm coat.
   He put on a jacket.
9. Steve didn't go fishing.
   He went hunting.
10. Mr. Stock is supposed to arrive at work before nine.
    He arrives at 9.05.

5

Read the English sentences.
Point out the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances.
Choose the corresponding Russian sentence.

1. ***Instead of your daughter sweeping the floor every day your son could vacuum it.***
   a) Вместо того, чтобы твоей дочери подметать пол каждый день, твой сын мог бы пропылесосить его.
   b) Вместо твоей дочери твой сын мог бы подметать пол каждый день и пылесосить его.
   c) Вместо того, чтобы подметать пол каждый день, твои дочь и сын могли бы пылесосить его.

2. ***They settled everything down without their teacher giving them advice how to do it.***
   a) Они все уладили без своего преподавателя и его совета, как это сделать.
   b) Они все уладили, причем их преподаватель не давал им совета, как это сделать.
   c) Они все уладили без своего преподавателя, который давал им совет, как это сделать.

3. ***She left without her parents seeing her.***
   a) Она уехала без родителей, не повидавшись с ними.
   b) Она уехала без свидания с родителями.
   c) Она уехала, а родители ее не видели.

6

Translate the sentences into Russian.
Use an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances expressed by a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction.

1. Вместо того, чтобы ругать его, объясни ему, как надо себя вести.
2. Он бежал без остановки.
3. Мы занимались без перерыва *(to take a break)*.
4. Вместо того, чтобы играть в рулетку *(to play roulette)*, займись чем-нибудь полезным.
5. Нехорошо уходить, не попрощавшись с хозяйкой.
6. Его слушали, не прерывая.
7. Он не мог работать и не получать зарплату.
8. Вместо того, чтобы плакать, постарайся простить его.
9. Он не может обшаться с ними и не поссориться.
10. Вместо того, чтобы пойти в университет, она отправилась в кино.
11. Они расстались, не сообщив об этом своим родителям.
12. Ребята играли в прятки, и никто не мешал им.
13. Обсуждение было прекращено, и никто не спросил его мнения.
14. Он сел в машину и уехал, а его жена не видела его.

Everyone should realize that we have to clean up the environment. **Despite our *inheriting* land from our parents** we borrow it from our children.

Author Unidentified

e) THE ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF CONCESSION

An adverbial modifier of concession is preceded by the prepositions ***despite, in spite of***.

I'm glad it's all turned out well ***despite*** *your going behind my back.*
(= ...though you went behind my back.)
Я рад, что все обошлось, несмотря на то, что ты действовал за моей спиной.

In spite of *knowing nothing about business*, he wanted to supervise everything.
(= Though he knew nothing about business...)
Хоть он и ничего не знал о том, как вести дело, он хотел всем руководить.

KEEP SMILING

SHORT STORIES

A school master keeps his young pupil waiting for him in the library. When at last he comes in he finds the child busy reading. The book which he is reading happens to be a dictionary.

"How do you like your book, my boy?" the teacher asks him smiling. "I find the stories very fine indeed," says the boy ready to please his master, **"in spite of their *being* so uncommonly short."**

III.6. EXERCISES

0

What prepositions precede the gerund used as adverbial modifier of concession?

1

Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of concession. Note the prepositions preceding the adverbial modifier of concession.
Translate the sentences into Russian.

MODEL

She managed to do it **despite your *disturbing* her**.
Ей удалось сделать это, **несмотря на то, что ты ей *мешал***.

(**хотя *ты* ей *мешал***)

1. They have been married for twenty years despite everyone thinking that they were conflicting personalities.
2. In spite of our children being close friends we have never gone for a holiday together.
3. Despite him learning all the rules his teacher didn't give him a pass.
4. Despite their parents disapproving of the idea they made up their mind to spend their honeymoon in Florida.
5. Sid never took offence in spite of being constantly laughed at.
6. Despite her child being frightened she tried to pull herself together and calm him down.
7. It took Lisa a couple of hours to make a very good meal for the family despite her mother giving her a hand.

8. He got out of the difficulty in spite of not getting any help.
9. Rob took his wife to the clinic despite her refusing to go there.
10. In spite of her trying to impress her boss with diligence he decided not to promote her.
11. The University public didn't like the new film despite its being a hit.
12. The boy had no appetite in spite of having had no meal since morning.
13. Jill didn't get the job in spite of having all the necessary qualifications.
14. She went to work in spite of being unwell.
15. He still loves her in spite of her having betrayed him.
16. Despite being blinded in his right eye in a battle off Corsica, H. Nelson was soon made an admiral.

2

Paraphrase the sentences.
Use an adverbial modifier of concession expressed by a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction.

MODEL

Though he hasn't seen her for a long time he doesn't miss her. →

He doesn't miss her **despite *not having seen* her for a long time**.

1. Though the weather was nasty we decided not to stay indoors.
2. Though she spends so much time on going to work she is never late.
3. Although he put on a warm coat he caught cold.
4. Though he spoke with a strong Russian accent his English was good enough.
5. We agreed to invite the man although he was a total stranger to us.
6. Though Bill had improved his tennis he wasn't able to win the competition.

7. She didn't get tired although she was cleaning the flat all morning.
8. Though his wife objected he sold the house to the local council.
9. He wasn't going to buy the painting although he collected antiques.
10. Though London suffers from air pollution we refused to live in the suburbs.
11. Although the traffic was bad he arrived on time.
12. Though they lived in the same block of flats they rarely saw each other.

A. Richard is a strong-willed person.
Say what he managed to do *despite, in spite of different situations.*
Use a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of concession.
You may change the position of the adverbial modifier.

Richard managed to...	***despite/ in spite of***	being very tired after work.
		his wife having left him.
		his child being seriously ill.
		his friend having betrayed him.
		his counterpart having let him down.
		his car having been stolen.
		his firm having gone bankrupt.
		his dog having died.
		his parrot having flown away.

Suggested variants:

1. to establish a new company
2. to do the shopping
3. to look after his child and do all the domestic chores
4. to find a nurse and a good therapist
5. to find the thief

6. to forgive him/not to pay him back
7. not to judge a person
8. to buy and bring up a puppy
9. to find it in the zoo.

B. Laura is a lazy and stubborn girl.
Say what she refused to do.

Laura refused to...	***despite/ in spite of***	her mother asking her to do it. her father telling her not to go there. her friend persuading her to go to the library. her little sister begging her to take her there. her boyfriend having invited her to do it. her teacher telling her to do it before the exam.

Suggested variants:

1. to take her to the zoo
2. to do the cleaning
3. to rewrite one's test
4. to stay at home
5. to read up for the exam
6. to visit his grandma

4

Read the English sentences.
Point out the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of concession.
Choose the corresponding Russian sentence.

1. ***Despite his children disturbing him he managed to finish his work.***
   a) Хотя дети ему мешают, ему удалось закончить работу.
   b) Несмотря на детей, мешавших ему, он смог закончить работу.
   c) Хотя его дети помешали ему, он смог закончить работу.

2. ***In spite of her classmates and teachers willing to have a farewell party she didn't feel like going there.***
   a) Несмотря на ее одноклассников и учителей, которые хотели устроить выпускной вечер, ей не хотелось идти туда.
   b) Несмотря на нее, ее одноклассники и учителя хотели устроить выпускной вечер, а она не хотела туда идти.
   c) Хотя ее одноклассники и учителя хотели устроить выпускной вечер, она не хотела туда идти.

3. ***Despite him investigating the problem the results didn't prove his hypothesis.***
   a) Несмотря на его исследование проблемы, результаты не подтвердили его гипотезу.
   b) Несмотря на то, что он исследует проблему, результаты не подтвердили его гипотезу.
   c) Несмотря на него, при исследовании проблемы результаты не подтвердили его гипотезу.

4. ***In spite of the book having been published we couldn't buy it anywhere.***
   a) Хотя книга была опубликована, мы нигде не могли ее купить.
   b) Несмотря на книгу, которая публиковалась, мы нигде не могли ее купить.
   c) Хотя книга публиковалась, мы нигде не могли ее купить.

5

Translate the sentences into English.
Use an adverbial modifier of concession expressed by a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction.

1. Хотя он любил ее, он не решался сделать ей предложение.
2. Хотя она выглядела молодо, она одевалась, как старуха.
3. Несмотря на то, что все засмеялись, шутка была неудачной.

4. Хотя в детстве он много рисовал, он не стал художником.
5. Несмотря на то, что он обидел ее *(to give offence to somebody)*, она не хотела мстить ему.
6. Хотя жена жаловалась на него, он обожал ее.
7. Хотя у меня дома много словарей, я не смог перевести это предложение.
8. Несмотря на то, что он плохо владел французским, он любил смотреть французские фильмы.
9. Несмотря на то, что они не списывали *(to crib off)* друг с друга, они получили отличную оценку за последнюю контрольную.
10. Хотя он разговаривал с ней в таком тоне *(in this tone)*, она не чувствовала себя несчастной.
11. Несмотря на то, что при встрече они обменивались шутками *(to exchange jokes)*, они не были друзьями.
12. Хотя у каждого были свои обязанности, им не удалось организовать вечер.

Is there any hope to be forgiven
without your *forgiving* people?

Author Unidentified

f) THE ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF CONDITION

An adverbial modifier of condition is preceded by the prepositions ***without, but for, in case of, in the event of***.

Should I be satisfied ***without*** *taking advantage of that*?
(= ...if I didn't take advantage of that?)
Был ли бы я удовлетворен, если бы не воспользовался этим преимуществом?

I shan't be long ***in case of*** *going there myself*.
(= ...if I go there myself.)
Я не задержусь, в случае если пойду туда сам.

But for *your having told me the truth* I would still be in the dark on everything.
(= If you had not told me...)
Если бы ты не сказал мне правду, я бы так ничего и не знал.

He asked his sister to look after his children ***in the event of*** *his falling ill*.
Он попросил сестру присмотреть за детьми, если он заболеет.

PEOPLE SAY

We can't go on appropriating more and more money to state universities **without *knowing* that we're getting an excellent product back out of them**.

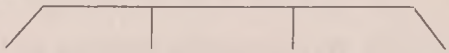
Author Unidentified

KEEP SMILING

Proud wife (talking with her friend): "I don't feel safe **without George *driving***, now that he has joined the Red Cross. He is learning first aid, and knows where all the hospitals are."

III.6. EXERCISES

0 **What prepositions precede the gerund used as adverbial modifier of condition?**



1 **Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of condition. Note the prepositions preceding the adverbial modifier of condition.**
Translate the sentences into Russian.

MODEL

You can't start the engine **without** ***turning*** **the key.**
Нельзя завести мотор, ***не повернув*** **ключ.**
... **если *не повернешь*...**
... **если *не повернуть*...**

1. Carol can't wake up early in the morning without setting her alarm-clock for seven.
2. But for him being so talented they wouldn't keep him at this job.
3. Without having an alibi he can't prove anything.
4. In case of finding your key put it on the top shelf.
5. But for his having given me the cassette I wouldn't be able to tell you about the film now.
6. In case of his refusing to keep you company don't be upset.
7. In the event of their causing you any real trouble, give me a ring.
8. But for his helping her she wouldn't pay the rent regularly.

9. Tony won't get better without you calling the doctor in.
10. You can't book an air ticket abroad without getting a visa.
11. They would have got lost but for having read the map carefully.
12. In case of returning the book you'll be allowed to borrow another one.
13. In case of his locking the door she won't get into the house.
14. But for having packed his bags beforehand he would have missed the coach.
15. In case of the contract being checked by the expert you may sign it.
16. In the event of getting a letter from them let her know about it.
17. But for the road being repaired we would catch the train.
18. Without having a car of your own you can't get there so quickly.

2

Paraphrase the sentences.
Use an adverbial modifier of condition expressed by a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction.
Choose the proper preposition.
Note the negation in a conditional clause and the meaning of the Subjunctive Mood in the finite verb.

MODEL

If you have no true friends you may feel lonely. →
Without *having* true friends you may feel lonely.

If I hadn't learned English when a student I wouldn't travel abroad now. →
(**hadn't learned** — non-factual Past Perfect)
But for *having learned* English when a student
I wouldn't travel abroad now.

If you see Sam say hello to him. →
In case of *seeing* Sam say hello to him.

см. стр. 222

1. If you had enough money you could lend him some.
2. If the guarantee doesn't last long, she won't buy the fridge.
3. If they offer you a new post, don't refuse.
4. If they are late, don't wait and start the discussion.
5. If Julia were not depressed she would receive you now.
6. I can't call them unless I get their number.
7. If he were not so busy he would take you to the station.
8. If my elder son goes to the supermarket with me he will help me with the bags.
9. If they send you a telex, answer them right away.
10. If you don't get the text-book you won't pass your test.
11. If you call them tonight you are likely to reach them.
12. If he hadn't taken his camera with him he wouldn't be enjoying these pictures now.
13. If Max hadn't wound up his watch he would have overslept yesterday.

3

Translate the sentences into English.
Use a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of condition preceded by the preposition *but for* implying negation.
Use the verb-predicate in the Subjunctive Mood.
Choose the proper form of the gerund denoting

1) *priority,*
2) *simultaneity,*
3) *reference to no particular time.*

MODEL

1. ***(priority)***
Если ***бы*** они ***не*** поссорились, он ***бы*** сейчас пригласил ее на свадьбу.
But for* their *having quarreled he *would invite* her to his wedding.

см. стр. 223

MODEL

2. ***(simultaneity)***
Если ***бы*** ему ***не*** надо было ходить на работу каждый день, у него было ***бы*** больше свободного времени.
But for having to go **to work every day** he *would have* more free time.

3. ***(to no particular time)***
Если ***бы*** он ***не*** был таким транжирой, жена могла ***бы*** откладывать деньги на летний отпуск.
But for **his *being* such a spendthrift** his wife *would be able to save* some money for their summer holiday.

1. Если бы он не был таким великодушным, он бы наказал его.
2. Если бы Сэм не поменял квартиру, он бы жил сейчас рядом с нами.
3. Если бы Чарльз не дурачил ее *(to fool someone)*, она бы так не нервничала.
4. Если бы Маргарет не совала все время нос в его дела *(to poke one's nose into one's business)*, он бы не жаловался на нее.
5. Если бы она тогда не поехала на море, она бы не встретилась с этой семьей.
6. Если бы она не ходила в оздоровительный центр *(health centre)*, она бы чувствовала себя хуже.
7. Если бы Мария не была такой общительной, у нее бы не было столько друзей.
8. Если бы она не получила вчера стипендию, она бы не смогла одолжить тебе деньги.
9. Если бы она не писала конспекты на лекциях, ей было бы труднее готовиться к экзаменам.
10. Если бы мальчик не был таким серьезным, он бы согласился играть эту комическую роль.

4

Work in pairs.
Ask your groupmate questions and let him/her answer them using a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction as adverbial modifier of condition with the proper preposition: *in case of/but for/without*.
Change the finite verb if necessary.

MODEL 1

– In what case can you make calls?
– I can make calls **in case of *being* on the phone**.

Or

– **But for *being* on the phone** I would*n't* be able to make calls.

In what case	do/will/would/can	you	you fly to London? go to the country? go hunting? buy a PC? arrange a party? get a call from your foreign friend? need a TV repairman? call a maintenance driver? decorate the flat? move to a new flat? rent a flat? take a taxi?
	are		excited? happy? embarrassed?

Suggested variants:

1. to be fine *(the weather)*
2. to be one's hobby
3. to book a ticket in the travel agency
4. to save enough money

5. to come to see someone
6. to have no flat of your own
7. to get clogged *(the plumbing)*
8. to start leaking
9. to start dripping *(the tap)*
10. to buy a new flat
11. to celebrate one's graduating from the University/ one's parents' silver wedding
12. to go to the airport
13. to take an exam
14. to be given a pass
15. to get married
16. to be ashamed of something

MODEL 2

– Without what can't you visit your friends abroad?
– I can't do it **without *having* an invitation from them**.

Or

– **But for *having* an invitation from my friends** I would*n't* be able to visit them abroad.

Without what can't you sleep well in a stuffy room?
watch an English film?
translate a poem?
drive a car?
grow flowers?
get married?
cook mushroom soup?
be polite?
make a good doctor?
make a good teacher?

Suggested variants:

1. to have a garden
2. to keep the window open
3. to get a driving license
4. to be able to write poems
5. to know English
6. to be well brought up
7. to have mushrooms
8. to be well educated
9. to love children, etc.

5

Complete the sentences.
Use an adverbial modifier of condition expressed by the preposition *but for + a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction*.
Note the time reference of the action expressed by the gerund and use the proper form of the gerund.

MODEL

He wouldn't ride a motorbike...
He wouldn't ride a motorbike **but for its *being* his hobby**.

1. Mark would trust Mike...
2. The surgeon wouldn't agree to operate at once...
3. Bob's dad wouldn't mend the television...
4. Helen wouldn't marry Dan...
5. The war veterans wouldn't have taken part in the parade...
6. They wouldn't have sent them the books...
7. The letter wouldn't have been delivered yesterday...
8. The film director wouldn't make films every year...
9. The actor wouldn't get the leading part...
10. The museum wouldn't have bought the private collection...
11. The man wouldn't be interviewed so often...
12. She would notice him...

Suggested variants:

1. to be sponsored
2. to be famous
3. to have the necessary equipment
4. to have a wonderful pair of hands
5. to be taken to Moscow
6. to be married to a film star
7. to get them in the book store
8. to post on time
9. to deceive someone once
10. to be persuaded by her parents
11. to be deeply involved with his work
12. to contain a lot of antique pieces

6

Read the English sentences.
Point out the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of condition.
Choose the corresponding Russian sentence.

1. ***You can't have a nice holiday without there being a river or a lake nearby.***
   a) Нельзя хорошо отдохнуть, если рядом нет реки или озера.
   b) Нельзя хорошо отдохнуть без реки или озера, находящихся рядом.
   c) Нельзя хорошо отдохнуть без близко расположенных там реки или озера.

2. ***Can he cope with his problems without his parents supporting him?***
   a) Может ли он справиться со своими проблемами без родителей, которые поддерживают его?
   b) Может ли он справиться со своими проблемами без родителей, которые поддержали его?
   c) Может ли он справиться со своими проблемами без того, чтобы родители поддерживали его?

3. ***But for the doctor having given him proper advice he wouldn't have fully recovered.***
   a) Если бы не врач и его правильный совет, он бы полностью не поправился.
   b) Если бы врач не дал ему правильный совет, он бы полностью не поправился.
   c) Если бы не врач, который дал ему правильный совет, он бы полностью не поправился.

4. ***But for the yacht being repaired they would take a pleasure trip to the islands next week.***
   a) Если бы не яхта, которая ремонтировалась, они отправились бы в путешествие на острова на следующей неделе.

b) Если бы не отремонтированная яхта, они отправились бы в путешествие на острова на следующей неделе.
c) Если бы яхту не ремонтировали, они отправились бы в путешествие на острова на следующей неделе.

7

Translate the sentences into English.
Use an adverbial modifier of condition expressed by a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction. Choose the proper preposition.

1. Без его участия в соревнованиях мы не можем выиграть.
2. В случае их приезда она сообщит вам.
3. Если они обвинят вас в этом, не принимайте это близко к сердцу.
4. Если бы он не тратил столько денег на игру в карты, он мог бы начать собственное дело.
5. Если бы он тогда не вложил деньги, их фирма не выжила бы сейчас.
6. Если его продвинут по службе, он может сделать карьеру.
7. Не извинившись перед ним за нашу ошибку *(to apologize to somebody for something)*, не удастся уговорить его придти.
8. Если бы он не заболел, он бы обязательно поздравил тебя.
9. Не спросив ее согласия на работу с нами, мы не сможем принять решения.
10. Дети не всегда могут действовать правильно, если им не сказать, что делать.
11. В том случае, если они отвезут вас за город, вы немного отдохнете.
12. Если подруга позвонит тебе, поблагодари ее.
13. Если бы он не женился на ней, она бы никогда не вышла замуж за другого.
14. Нельзя получить работу, не пройдя собеседования *(to interview)*.

Riches are **for *spending***.

F. Bacon. Essays

g) THE ADVERBIAL MODIFIER OF PURPOSE

An adverbial modifier of purpose follows the prepositions ***for, for the purpose of, for the object of, with a view to***.

Florence came to the house ***for*** *looking after everything herself.*
(= ...so that she could look after...)
Флоренс приехала в дом, чтобы самой за всем проследить.

With a view to *improving his ability to speak French*, he spends most of his holidays in France.
(= ...in order to improve his ability...)
Чтобы развить свои способности говорить по-французски (совершенствовать французский), он весь свой отпуск всегда проводит во Франции.

Did you come to London ***for the purpose of*** *seeing your family* or for some other purpose?
Вы приехали в Лондон, чтобы повидать семью или с другой целью?

KEEP SMILING

IT DOESN'T PAY

FATHER: What a naughty boy you are today, Tommy! Didn't I give you a shilling yesterday **for *being* good**? Why can't you always be good like your cousin Jack?

TOMMY: Well, daddy, it doesn't pay. If I were good every day, who would think of giving me a shilling?

KEEP SMILING

UNUSUAL LANDING

The plane was coming in **for *landing***. The passenger soldier was nervous while fastening the belt. The air hostess said: "Don't worry, young man! Everything is all right. You probably have never been in a plane before?"

"Yes, I have. But I've never had a chance to land like this. I'm a paratrooper."

❖ ❖ ❖

Once a year Curtis takes a week off **for *going* on a fishing trip to a state noted for *fishing***.

The last time he was up there the fish were biting so good that he couldn't stop when he had caught the limit.

A deputy game warden caught him with the goods and brought him into court.

"You are charged with having caught 18 more black bass than the law allows. Are you guilty or not guilty?" the judge asked.

"Well, I'm guilty," Curtis had to admit.

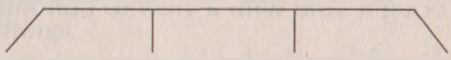
"Ten dollars and costs."

Curtis paid the fine and then asked the judge: "And now, Your Honour, may I have several typewritten copies of the court-record made to take back and show to my friends?"

III.6. EXERCISES

0

What prepositions precede the gerund used as adverbial modifier of purpose?



1

Point out the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of purpose.
Note the prepositions preceding the adverbial modifier of purpose.
Translate the sentences into Russian.

MODEL

He has black coffee for breakfast ***for raising*** **his blood pressure**.
Он пьет на завтрак черный кофе, **чтобы *повысить* давление/для *повышения* давления**.

1. He goes to expeditions for exploring the Arctic Ocean.
2. They have exchanged letters with a view to meeting to discuss these problems.
3. The police arrived for the purpose of investigating the crime.
4. He hunted for a creative job with the object of doing what he liked.
5. He flirted with the girl for borrowing some money from her.
6. They recommended a special diet for losing weight.
7. With a view to extending our trade we invited new partners.
8. My close friend went to the Alps for skiing there.

9. They listened to the news with the object of getting some information about the car accident.
10. They are building a block of flats for the purpose of selling flats.
11. This computer program was written for polishing one's English.
12. He bought a lot of books on English art with the object of studying it in detail.
13. He did it with a view to escaping.
14. This sort of material is usually chosen for making curtains.
15. He has bought land with a view to building a house.

2

Paraphrase the sentences.
Use an adverbial modifier of purpose expressed by a gerund, a gerundial phrase or gerundial construction.

MODEL

They often showed the students historical films **to give them an idea of the past.** →

They often showed the students historical films **for the purpose of *giving* them an idea of the past**.

1. They invited him in order to have the piano tuned.
2. He gave people guidance in computer programming to improve their skills.
3. One can use a coffee-maker to make coffee.
4. The fire-brigade arrived in order to put out the fire.
5. He was taken to hospital to be operated on.
6. To cut wood one can use only a sharp knife.
7. She trained for the race so as to beat Ann Lock.
8. We switched on the radio to hear the weather forecast.
9. She took the medicine regularly in order to get rid of her cough.
10. Molly closed the window not to catch cold.

11. We came early to speak to the chief.
12. Dick rang her up in order to leave a message for Mary.
13. The guys went to the pub to have a drink.
14. He went on business to Dublin to negotiate with his partners.
15. We use a toast-maker to make toasts.

3

Work in pairs.

A. Ask your partner *what for we need the following things.*

Let him use an adverbial modifier of purpose expressed by a gerund or a gerundial phrase preceded by the preposition *for.*

MODEL

– What for do we need a scanner?
– As far as I know, a scanner is used **for *examining* things in hospitals, airports, research laboratories**./
– Don't you know that.....?

Suggested variants:

1. a saw/an ax	to cut wood
2. a ladder	to climb up a wall/a tree
3. a cassette-player	to play/to record music
4. a ventilator/a fan	to let fresh air into a room
5. a drier	to dry clothes
6. a boiler	to provide hot water for the central heating
7. a printer	to print out information from the computer on paper
8. a xerox	to make photocopies of pieces of paper

B. The city government made a number of decisions/ passed some laws ***with the object of...***
with a view to...
for the purpose of...
Say what for they did it.
Make up a sentence and use an adverbial modifier of purpose with one of the prepositions given above.

MODEL

The government passed a new law **with the object of *helping* the homeless**.

Suggested variants:

1. to improve the city transport system
2. to restore some architectural ensembles
3. to repair the roads
4. to clean the city
5. to increase an old age pension
6. to invest money in the textile industry
7. to build a block of flats for war veterans
8. to build a number of swimming pools
9. to lay out a large park
10. to reconstruct five-storey blocks of flats

4

Read the English sentences.
Point out the gerundial construction used as adverbial modifier of purpose.
Choose the corresponding Russian sentence.

1. ***The government ordered to organize a committee with a view to most urgent problems being discussed and solved.***
   а) Правительство дало указание организовать комитет, чтобы обсудить и решить самые насущные проблемы.

b) Правительство дало указание организовать комитет, видя самые насущные проблемы, которые надо обсудить и решить.
c) Правительство указало на организацию комитета, имеющего свой взгляд на обсуждение и решение самых насущных проблем.

2. ***The chairman decided to postpone the meeting with the object of the agenda being formed first.***
a) Председатель решил, что перенос заседания прежде всего поможет сосредоточиться на формировании повестки дня.
b) Председатель решил отложить заседание на тему о первоначальном формировании повестки дня.
c) Председатель решил перенести заседание, чтобы прежде всего сформировать повестку дня.

3. ***Mr. Owen agreed to receive the delegation for the purpose of their informing him of their objections.***
a) Мистер Оуэн согласился принять делегацию, чтобы проинформировать их о своих возражениях.
b) Мистер Оуэн согласился и принял делегацию, цель которой была получить информацию о его возражениях.
c) Мистер Оуэн согласился принять делегацию с тем, чтобы они проинформировали его о своих возражениях.

4. ***They sent the papers for the clerk signing them.***
a) Они отправляли документы в тот период, когда чиновник их подписывал.
b) Они отправили документы для чиновника, который их подписывал.
c) Они отправили документы, чтобы чиновник их подписал.

5

Translate the sentences into English.
Use an adverbial modifier of purpose expressed by a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction.

1. Я подошла к ним, чтобы узнать, как доехать до вокзала.
2. Для проведения чемпионата мира по хоккею построили новый Дворец Спорта.
3. Она делала все возможное, чтобы вызвать в нем доверие.
4. Посудомоечная машина используется для мытья чашек, тарелок и другой посуды.
5. Чтобы организовать свой отпуск в Европе, они пошли в туристическое агентство.
6. Она дала полицейскому фотографию преступника, чтобы помочь найти его.
7. Я включила отопление, чтобы высушить белье.
8. Разные ножи используются для разрезания бумаги, продуктов, ткани и других материалов.
9. Они снизили цены, чтобы продать овощи.
10. Он позвонил ей, чтобы сообщить новость.
11. Для получения медицинской помощи *(to get medical treatment)* во время пребывания за границей надо получить страховой полис *(to arrange insurance)*.
12. Он приехал к ним, чтобы посадить яблони в саду.
13. Мать велела ему придти в три, чтобы погулять с сестрой.

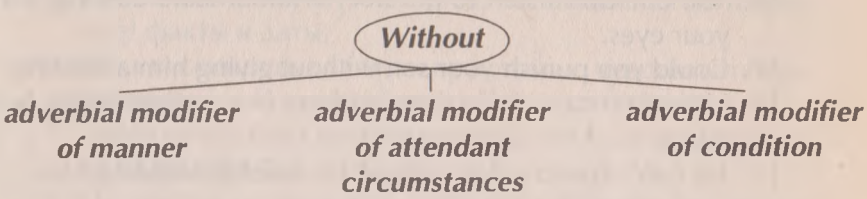
h) THE SAME PREPOSITION – DIFFERENT ADVERBIAL MODIFIERS

As it is seen from the above rules and examples the gerund (or the gerundial phrase, or the gerundial construction) combined with ***the same preposition*** may be used in ***different*** syntactical functions: thus with the preposition ***without*** the gerund may function as an adverbial modifier of *manner, attendant circumstances* and *condition*, with the preposition ***in*** it may perform the function of the adverbial modifier of *manner* and *time*, after the preposition ***for*** it may function as an adverbial modifier of *purpose* and *reason*.

Preposition	Adverbial modifier of	Example	Translation
for	1. **reason**	She couldn't speak **for *crying***.	Она не могла говорить из-за слез.
	2. **purpose**	The doctors came to the place of accident **for *rescuing people***.	Врачи приехали на место происшествия, чтобы спасти людей.
in	1. **time**	**In *crossing* the street** first look to the left and then to the right.	Переходя улицу, сперва посмотри налево, а затем направо.
	2. **manner**	**In *making* herself busy** she stopped worrying.	Заняв себя делом, она перестала волноваться.

Preposition	Adverbial modifier of	Example	Translation
without	1. **manner**	She learned the words **without *writing* them down.**	Она учила слова, не записывая их.
	2. **attendant circumstances**	He went away **without *saying* good-bye.**	Он ушел не попрощавшись.
	3. **condition**	I won't be able to learn the words **without *writing* them down.**	Я не смогу выучить слова, если не буду их записывать.

III.6. EXERCISES



1 **State the type of the adverbial modifier expressed by a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. Without improving one's grammar one can't speak good English.
2. He knows lots of Blake's poems and can recite them without stopping.
3. One can't sell some foodstuffs without wrapping them up.
4. Robin never writes his tests without cribbing.
5. You can't peel a mango without having a sharp knife.
6. The man left the shop without paying for the purchase.
7. His little son can't walk without stumbling.
8. Have you ever bought a suit or a pair of shoes without trying them on?
9. One can make pastry without adding milk.
10. I've never seen the Greenes being on holiday without Tom having a drink every day and Betty scolding him for that.
11. He can't talk with people without kidding.
12. Can you pass your examination session without reading up for exams and staying up late?
13. She missed the seminars without having a good excuse.

[1]See the table p. 237 – 238.

14. I have never seen Thomas sitting in his armchair without stroking his cat.
15. You can't make this part *(деталь)* without cutting it into three pieces first.
16. You couldn't listen to his story without tears coming into your eyes.
17. Could you punish your son without giving him a beating?
18. Little Ann can't fall asleep without her mother giving her a kiss.
19. He can't spend a day without his teacher scolding him.

KEEP SMILING

FIGHTING ONE'S ABSENT-MINDEDNESS

PROFESSOR X. (TO HIS WIFE): This time you won't scold me for having left my umbrella in the club, for here it is.

HIS WIFE: Poor boy, I shall scold you again, for this time you left home **without *taking* one**.

2

Translate the sentences into English.
Use an adverbial modifier 1) of manner
2) of attendant circumstances
3) of condition
preceded by the preposition *without*.

1. Не стоит сдаваться *(to give in)*, не попытавшись преодолеть это.
2. Она писала письмо за письмом, не останавливаясь.

3. Он не может смотреть телевизор без очков *(to wear his specs)*.
4. У нее такой плохой почерк, что я не могу читать ее конспекты без лупы *(a magnifying glass)*.
5. Невозможно изучать историю, не запоминая *(to memorize)* факты и даты.
6. Нельзя смотреть на него и при этом не чувствовать волнения.
7. Девочка не могла разговаривать с ней и не пожаловаться на подругу.
8. Не мог бы ты выражать свое неодобрение без крика?
9. Она может сделать котлеты, не добавляя яйцо в фарш *(minced meat)*.
10. Этот фрукт можно есть, не очищая кожуру *(to peel)*.
11. Можно придерживаться диеты, не считая при этом калории *(to count calories)*.

PEOPLE SAY

A snail walks on one foot **without *lifting* it from the ground**.

Common Knowledge

❖ ❖ ❖

The eyeballs of the giraffe protrude to such an extent that he can see in all directions **without *turning* his head**.

Common Knowledge

❖ ❖ ❖

The hardest thing about any political campaign is how to win **without *proving* that you are unworthy of winning**.

A. Stevenson

PEOPLE SAY

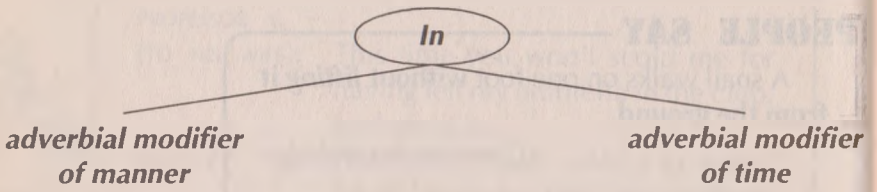
The faculty of doubting is rare among men. A few choice spirits carry the germ of it in them, but these do not develop **without *training***.

Author Unidentified

❖ ❖ ❖

For more than forty years I have been speaking prose **without *knowing* it**.

J. B. Moliere.
The Citizen Turned Gentleman



3 **State the type of the adverbial modifier expressed by a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. The day was spent in revising the vocabulary.
2. In revising the vocabulary I learnt a lot of new words and phrases.
3. The morning was spent in cleaning the kitchen.
4. In cleaning the kitchen I threw away the things I didn't need.
5. The afternoon was spent in cooking.
6. In cooking the salad I added too much salt.
7. The evening was spent in watching television.

8. In watching television I fell asleep.
9. Summer is usually spent in travelling.
10. In travelling abroad he has an opportunity to polish his English and German.
11. In reading up for the exam he passed the whole week.
12. In reading up for the exam he discovered that he didn't remember many rules.
13. It's unbelievable that a day can be spent in doing the washing.
14. In doing the washing she managed to remove the stains off her best blouse.
15. I spent two days in trying to get him on the phone.
16. In trying to get him on the phone I realised that he couldn't give me a hand.

4

Translate the sentences into English.
Use an adverbial modifier 1) of manner
2) of time
preceded by the preposition *in*.

1. Утро ушло на то, что я уговаривал *(to persuade)* его не ездить туда.
2. Уговаривая его не ездить туда, я почувствовал, что он меня не послушает.
3. Нельзя проводить свободное время, только смотря телевизор.
4. Когда я смотрел этот сериал *(a soap opera)*, я просто зря тратил время.
5. Читая книги для "чайников" *(for dummies)*, можно научиться работать с компьютером.
6. Все вечера проходили в разговорах о политике.
7. Болтая с подружками по телефону, она забыла о своих обязанностях.
8. Общаясь с англичанами, читая книги в оригинале, слушая кассеты, она могла совершенствовать свои знания английского *(to improve one's English)*.

PEOPLE SAY

In *considering* people's behaviour, humour seems to be especially important.

Author Unidentified

❖ ❖ ❖

In *deciding* the ratings of the films, no consideration is given to artistic, technical, or dramatic values. Only moral content is weighed.

Legion of Decency, 1935

For

adverbial modifier of reason — ***adverbial modifier of purpose***

5 **State the type of the adverbial modifier expressed by a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. He can't be a top student for being a lazy-bones.
2. We spoke to her for making her confess her guilt.
3. She often asks them to give her a lift for having a little word with them on her way home.
4. He spent a sleepless night for thinking about his troubles.
5. They concealed the information for the work being done secretely.
6. Mike wasn't sure she would come for her not having phoned him.
7. The jury chose Sally Brick as Miss University for her being a very attractive girl.
8. It's a pity that James took offence for Robert making a fool of him.

9. The gold was tested and refined in the lab for being sent to the workshop.
10. Lyle felt embarrassed for my doubting his word.
11. You ought to empty the water out of those bottles for using them in the experiment.
12. I didn't really get the point of the story for Dave speaking in a low voice.
13. The backache is getting to her now for her having sat in a draught.
14. She ignored his threats for not trusting him.
15. You should read the novel in the original for getting an idea of the writer's style.

6

Translate the sentences into English.
Use an adverbial modifier 1) of reason
2) of purpose
preceded by the preposition *for*.

1. Картину известного художника привезли в провинциальный город, так как публика с нетерпением ждала выставки.
2. Картины известных художников привозят в музеи, чтобы показывать публике.
3. Он не мог приехать, так как был очень занят.
4. Сюда приезжают для лечения.
5. Отец посоветовал ему заняться *(to take up)* плаванием, так как он плохо плавал.
6. Бассейн предназначен для плавания.
7. Мама хочет стиральную машину, потому что она очень экономит время и силы *(to save time and effort)*.
8. Стиральная машина нужна для экономии сил и времени.
9. Концертный зал открыт для зрителей *(to be open for visitors)* только по воскресеньям, поскольку знаменитый оркестр не дает концерты в будние дни.
10. Зал был открыт для проведения в нем концертов.

One doesn't discover new lands **without *consenting* to lose sight of the shore** for a very long time.

Author Unidentified

Without + Gerund and Not + Participle I

As a rule both the phrases correspond to the Russian negative phrase *Не + Деепричастие*.

The difference in the translation into English depends on *the syntactical function* of the Russian negative phrase:

a) if the Russian negative phrase *Не + Деепричастие* is used as an adverbial modifier of **reason**, it corresponds to the English phrase **Not + Participle I**.

Не зная вашего адреса, я не мог написать вам.
(= *Так как я не знал...*)
Not knowing your address I could not write to you.
(= *As I didn't know your address*, I couldn't write to you.)

Не понимая значения слова, я сделал ошибку.
(= *Так как я не понимал...*)
Not understanding the meaning of the word I made a mistake.
(= *As I didn't understand the meaning of the word*, I made a mistake.)

b) if the Russian negative phrase *Не + Деепричастие* is used as an adverbial modifier of 1) **manner** or 2) **condition** or 3) **attendant circumstances**, it corresponds to the English phrase **Without + Gerund**.

1) Я пытался говорить, *не повышая голоса*.
(Каким образом?)
I tried to speak *without raising my voice*.
(How did I try to speak?)

2) Невозможно хорошо говорить по-английски, *не зная грамматику*.
(= *...если не знаешь...*)
One can't speak good English *without knowing grammar*.
(= One can't speak good English *if one doesn't know grammar*.)

3) Он вошел, *не постучавшись*.
(= *...и не постучал*.)
He came in *without knocking*.
(= *...and didn't knock*.)

PEOPLE SAY

Pragmatism is a way of dealing with problems in a practical way: ***not thinking* of two birds in the bush** one prefers three in hand.

Author Unidentified

KEEP SMILING

"I say, Gadsby," said Mr. Smith, as he entered a fishmonger's with a lot of tackle in his hand, "I want you to give me some fish to take home with me. Put them up to look as if they'd been caught today, will you?"

"Certainly, sir. How many?"

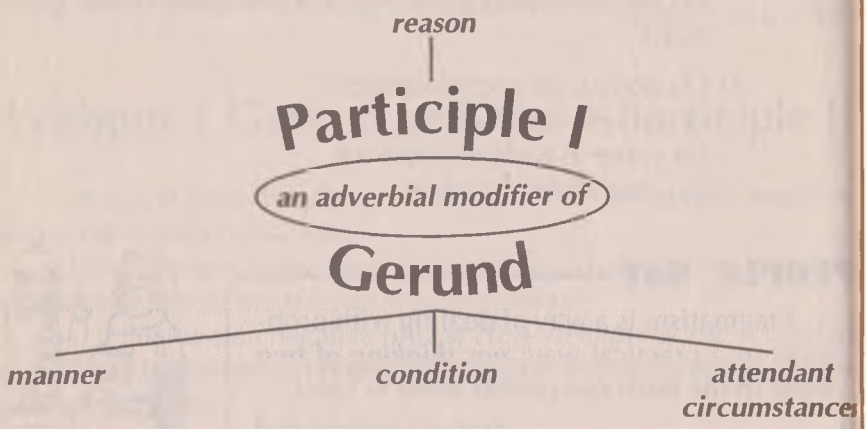
"Oh, you'd better give me three or four – mackerel. Make it look decent in quantity **without *appearing* to exaggerate**, you know."

"Yes, sir. You'd better take salmon, too."

"Why? What makes you think so?"

"Oh, nothing, except that your wife dropped here early this morning and said if you dropped in with your fishing-tackle I was to persuade you to take salmon, if possible, as she liked that kind better than any other."

IV. EXERCISES



1 **Define the syntactical functions of the phrases in bold type.**
Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. **Without shaking hands**, they put themselves at once into the postures of defence.
2. I trembled **without distinctly knowing why**.
3. You can't spell well **without learning the words**.
4. **Not wearing my spectacles**, I couldn't read the address.
5. A mountaineer can't ascend a glacier *(ледник)* **without being properly equipped**.
6. **Not having seen Nick for some days**, I couldn't tell him the news.
7. He sings beautifully **without ever having been taught**.
8. We sat there together **without saying anything**.
9. Suddenly, **without warning anybody**, the child jumped out of bed and came up to the window.
10. **Not being well equipped**, the mountaineer slipped and fell down.

11. One can't improve his pronunciation skills **without listening to English tapes**.
12. **Not knowing his surname**, I can't address him.
13. Simon can't pronounce the tongue-twister **without making a pause**.
14. He felt lonely **not having a family**.
15. The child can get the book **without standing on the stool**.
16. It is difficult to enrich your vocabulary **without reading English books in the original**.
17. They understood each other **without saying a single word**.
18. **Not knowing the way to Tower Bridge**, I decided to turn back.
19. He can't learn the poem by heart **without peeping into the book**.
20. **Not knowing the number of the train**, I couldn't meet her at the station.
21. He used to leave **without saying good-bye**.
22. There is no student who would take his exam **without being nervous**.
23. **Not seeing the girl's face**, I couldn't recognize her.
24. **Not knowing what to reply**, she leaned over and kissed him.

2

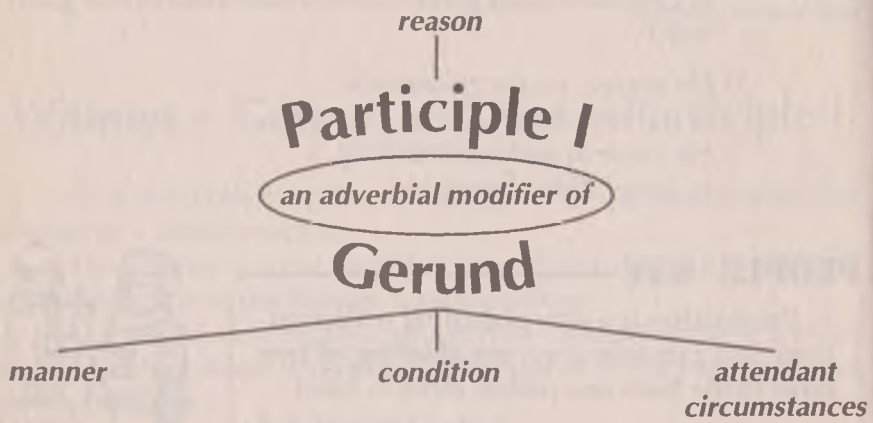
Translate the sentences into English.
Use an adverbial modifier of manner/condition/attendant circumstances expressed by *without* + *a gerund/ a gerundial phrase* or *not* + *participle I* as adverbial modifier of reason.

MODEL

Она легла спать, **не чувствуя усталости**.
(an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances)
She went to bed **without *feeling tired***.

см. стр. 250

IV. EXERCISES



1 **Define the syntactical functions of the phrases in bold type.**
Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. **Without shaking hands**, they put themselves at once into the postures of defence.
2. I trembled **without distinctly knowing why**.
3. You can't spell well **without learning the words**.
4. **Not wearing my spectacles**, I couldn't read the address.
5. A mountaineer can't ascend a glacier *(ледник)* **without being properly equipped**.
6. **Not having seen Nick for some days**, I couldn't tell him the news.
7. He sings beautifully **without ever having been taught**.
8. We sat there together **without saying anything**.
9. Suddenly, **without warning anybody**, the child jumped out of bed and came up to the window.
10. **Not being well equipped**, the mountaineer slipped and fell down.

11. One can't improve his pronunciation skills **without listening to English tapes**.
12. **Not knowing his surname**, I can't address him.
13. Simon can't pronounce the tongue-twister **without making a pause**.
14. He felt lonely **not having a family**.
15. The child can get the book **without standing on the stool**.
16. It is difficult to enrich your vocabulary **without reading English books in the original**.
17. They understood each other **without saying a single word**.
18. **Not knowing the way to Tower Bridge**, I decided to turn back.
19. He can't learn the poem by heart **without peeping into the book**.
20. **Not knowing the number of the train**, I couldn't meet her at the station.
21. He used to leave **without saying good-bye**.
22. There is no student who would take his exam **without being nervous**.
23. **Not seeing the girl's face**, I couldn't recognize her.
24. **Not knowing what to reply**, she leaned over and kissed him.

2

Translate the sentences into English.
Use an adverbial modifier of manner/condition/attendant circumstances expressed by *without + a gerund/ a gerundial phrase* or *not + participle I* as adverbial modifier of reason.

MODEL

Она легла спать, **не чувствуя усталости**.
(an adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances)
She went to bed **without *feeling tired***.

см. стр. 250

MODEL

Не чувствуя усталости, я решил лечь спать поздно.
***(an adverbial modifier* of *reason*)**
Not *feeling* tired I decided to stay up late.

A

1. Он уехал, никого не известив о своем решении.
2. Не известив никого о своем решении, он оказался в затруднительном положении.
3. Не посмотрев этот фильм, я не могу ничего о нем сказать.
4. Не посмотрев на светофор, он чуть не попал в аварию *(to have a narrow escape)*.
5. Ты не запомнишь песню, не прослушав ее несколько раз.
6. Не прослушав песню, я не знала, стоит ли покупать диск.
7. Не спросив разрешения, я не решился воспользоваться Вашими материалами.
8. Вы не будете пользоваться этими материалами, не спросив разрешения.
9. Не отвечая на мой вопрос, она вышла из аудитории.
10. Не зная, что ответить, она молчала.

B

1. Не зная алфавит, нельзя научиться писать.
2. Она легла спать, не раздеваясь.
3. Он повторял стихи, не останавливаясь после каждой строфы *(stanza)*.
4. Они вышли из гостиной, не произнося ни слова.
5. Не зная ее имени, я не решился подойти к ней.
6. Мы пытались понять, что он говорил, не задавая ему вопросов.
7. Не делая зарядку ежедневно, трудно похудеть.
8. Не говоря ни слова по-английски, я не могу с ним общаться *(to talk)*.

9. Он оставил ее, не предупредив о своем намерении уехать.
10. Не посмотрев этот спектакль, вы не можете участвовать в обсуждении.
11. Он нашел ее, не звоня ее друзьям.
12. Не пользуясь толковым словарем, этот текст невозможно понять.
13. Не имея машины, мы не можем ездить за город.
14. Не подумав как следует *(to think twice)*, он сделал неправильный шаг.
15. Его обыскали *(to search)*, не имея ордера на обыск *(a search warrant)*.
16. Не умея танцевать, он не ходил на дискотеку.

Men and Nature must work hand in hand.
The throwing out of balance of the resources
of Nature throws out of balance also the lives of men.

F. D. Roosevelt

It is a *true* **saying**, that a man must eat a peck of salt
with his friend, before he knows him.

Universal truth

THE GERUND AND THE VERBAL NOUN

Though coinciding in form with the non-perfect active gerund, the verbal noun differs from the gerund in that it is not a verb and has no verbal features. It shouldn't be confused with the gerund for the following reasons:

Being *a form of the verb* **the gerund**	Being *a noun* **the verbal noun**
1. has the verbal categories of voice and perfect.	1. has no verbal categories.
I don't mind ***being dropped*** at a café. Я не против того, чтобы меня высадили у кафе. They suspect him of ***having broken*** into the house at night. Его подозревают в том, что он ночью проник в дом.	— — — — — — — — — — — —

2. cannot be used with an article.	2. can be used with an article.
— — — — — — — — — — — —	a) She noticed ***the*** instant ***tensing*** of his shoulders. Она заметила, как у него внезапно напряглись плечи. b) Edward's appearance underwent ***a*** hasty ***tidying***. Внешность Эдварда была быстро приведена в порядок.
3. has no category of number.	3. has the category of number like any noun: can be used in the plural.
— — — — — — — — — — — —	He laughed at the prisoner's ***sufferings***. Он смеялся над страданиями заключенного.
4. can take a direct object (the gerund of transitive verbs).	4. can take only a prepositional object.
We should avoid ***injuring*** **the feelings of others**. Надо избегать того, чтобы делать людям больно.	***The crossing*** **of the bridge** took us a long time. У нас ушло много времени, чтобы перейти мост.
5. can be modified by an adverb.	5. can be modified by an adjective.
She burst out ***crying*** **bitterly**. Она горько расплакалась.	She could feel ***the*** **steady** ***beating*** of his heart. Она чувствовала ровное биение его сердца.

PEOPLE SAY

The proof of the pudding is in ***the eating***.*

English proverb

❖ ❖ ❖

Even ***reckoning*** makes lasting friends.*

English proverb

KEEP SMILING

"Why do you feed every tramp who comes along? They never do any work for you!"

"No," said the wife, "but it is quite a satisfaction to me to see a man eat a meal without finding fault with ***the cooking***."

V. EXERCISES

1 **Point out the gerunds and the verbal nouns. State the difference in their use.**

MODEL

We watched ***the incomings*** and ***outgoings*** of the tide.
incomings and *outgoings* are verbal nouns as they are used in the plural and with an article.

I like ***giving*** **presents**.
giving presents is a gerundial phrase. The gerund *giving* takes a direct object.

1. I felt as if the stopping of the clock stopped time in that mysterious place.
2. Wollingford is an ancient town and has been an active centre for the making of English history.
3. You are mistaken in supposing me a beggar.
4. I'm very grateful to you for helping my parents.
5. At first he determined to go to bed again but when he thought of the redressing and rewashing and the having of another bath, he determined he wouldn't.
6. As for Nella, she watched the incomings and outgoings of Prince Albert with a kingly interest.
7. A gull jolted Sally into an awareness of the passing of time.
8. He could hear the slamming of a door.

9. They were awakened by the sudden ringing of the phone.
10. I can't bear your slamming the door like that.
11. She noticed the instant tensing of his shoulders.
12. The only sound was the faint whirring of the antiquated central heating fan.
13. He felt for the first time the subtle stirring of a true love.
14. Edward's appearance had undergone a hasty tidying.
15. His proposal was encouraged, no doubt, by considerable batting of those alluring dark lashes.
16. Only the gentle ticking of the grandfather clock broke the silence.
17. Washing the children and cleaning the flat took her a lot of time.

THE WAYS OF TRANSLATING THE GERUND INTO RUSSIAN

The gerund has no corresponding form in the Russian language and is rendered in Russian in different ways:

The Ways of Translating the Gerund into Russian	English	Russian
1. ***by a noun*** or ***a preposition + a noun***	***Talking*** mends no holes.* I couldn't answer *for* ***coughing***.	***Разговоры*** в беде не помогают. Я не могла отвечать ***из-за кашля***.
2. ***by an infinitive***	***Doing*** is better than ***saying***.*	***Делать*** лучше чем ***говорить***.
3. ***by "деепричастие"***	***On entering*** *the house* he heard some noise upstairs.	***Войдя*** *в дом*, он услышал какой-то шум наверху.
4. ***by a finite verb in a subordinate clause***	She didn't remember *ever* ***feeling*** *really lonely or unhappy.*	Она не помнила, *чтобы когда-нибудь* ***чувствовала*** *себя действительно одинокой или несчастной.*

5. ***by a finite verb***	He left *without* ***saying*** *good-bye.*	Он ушел *и* ***не сказал*** *"До свидания".*
6. ***by an adjective***	A ***hunting*** season A ***swimming*** pool	***Охотничий*** сезон ***Плавательный*** бассейн

Gerundial constructions are almost always translated by a subordinate clause (a gerund is translated by a finite verb):

I couldn't understand him ***for his lisping.***
Я не понимал его, *потому что он* ***шепелявил.***

The passive gerund is nearly always rendered by a finite verb in a subordinate clause.

Her father didn't like ***being sent*** *away.*
Ее отцу не нравилось, *что его* ***отсылают*** *прочь.*

VII. EXERCISES

DIFFERENT SYNTACTICAL FUNCTIONS OF THE GERUND

1

State the syntactical function of the gerund or the gerundial phrase. Enumerate all the functions of the gerund preceded by the same preposition.[1]
Translate the sentences into Russian.

In

1. We had no hesitation in buying a fax-machine.
2. They succeeded in organizing an English course.
3. There is no sense in flattering her.
4. In driving at speed one should be very careful.
5. The use of such techniques resulted in developing computer technology.
6. The morning was spent in doing the flat.
7. Their friends helped them in collecting rare books.
8. In painting a portrait one usually uses a model.

PEOPLE SAY

The secret of being tiresome is **in *telling* everything**.

Author Unidentified

[1]See Appendix, p. 323.

PEOPLE SAY

Have patience with all things,
but chiefly have patience with yourself.
Do not lose courage **in *considering* your own imperfections**,
but instantly set about remedying them –
every day begin the task anew.

Ascribed to St. Francis De Sales

KEEP SMILING

Mark Twain, **in *making* an afternoon speech**, once said: "Speaking of fresh eggs, I am reminded of the town of Squash. In my early lecturing days I went to Squash to lecture in Temperance Hall, arriving in the afternoon. The town seemed very poorly billed. I thought I'd find out if the people knew anything at all about what was in store for them. So I turned in at the general store.

"Good afternoon, friend," I said to the general storekeeper. "Any entertainment here tonight to help a stranger while away his evening?"

The storekeeper, who was sorting mackerel, straightened up, wiped his briny hands on his apron, and said:

"I expect there's goin' to be a lecture. I've been sellin' eggs all day."

❖ ❖ ❖

There was an old person of Deal,
Who **in *walking*** used only his heel;
When they said, "Tell us why?"
He made no reply,
That mysterious old person of Deal.

KEEP SMILING

COLLABORATION

An old lady lived not far from Abbotsford, the residence of Walter Scott. At that time the great novelist was known only as a poet, for his first novel had not yet been written. Walter Scott would often come to see the old woman for he found her conversation both pleasant and edifying. She had quite a store of popular sayings and ancient tales. He meant to avail himself of all this wealth of folklore in his novels. *Waverley*, the first of his novels, was published anonymously. Walter Scott succeeded **in *concealing* his authorship from the public at large**. But he failed **in *deceiving* his old neighbour**. When he paid her his usual visit, she welcomed him as the author of *Waverley* and added: "There is nothing wonderful **in my *recognizing* your authorship**, sir, for I couldn't help seeing my own groats of wit in that bagful of gold."

❖ ❖ ❖

It was a death scene in a war play, but the director was not satisfied with the hero's acting. "Come on!" he cried. "Put more life **in your *dying***!"

For

1. They accepted his apologies for having caused trouble to them.
2. His father punished him for having lost the bag.
3. She felt the need for having a serious talk with them.

4. He apologized for not lending us any money.
5. I was responsible for doing the shopping.
6. The plant bought the instruments for testing the machine.
7. We decided not to spend the money for saving it for the children.
8. I refused to join my friends who were going to the Hermitage for having a lecture in the afternoon.
9. He reproached his wife for buying too many toys for their son.
10. People have different capacities for learning.

Of

1. We had no intention of going on holiday this summer.
2. The idea of inviting his friend to the skating-rink appealed to Jack.
3. They were proud of having collected so many nice pictures.
4. There was no hope of having a date with her.
5. She thought of divorcing him but hesitated.
6. His pals were sick of waiting for him every time they agreed to go somewhere.
7. He had no chance of getting into the University.

KEEP SMILING

RIGHT PLACE

Fred was fond **of *telling* his friends about his dreams**. "I went to bed last night and dreamed I died." "And the heat woke you up?" a bored listener inquired.

PEOPLE SAY

I like work; it fascinates me. I can sit and look at it for hours. I love to keep it by me: the idea **of *getting rid* of it** nearly breaks my heart.

J. K. Jerome. Three Men in a Boat

❖ ❖ ❖

I have discovered the art **of *deceiving* diplomats**. I speak the truth, and they never believe me.

Author Unidentified

❖ ❖ ❖

Everyone knows the old-time politicians' game **of *promising* in each locality the things which that locality wishes**.

Author Unidentified

To

1. They agreed to walking our dog while we were away.
2. What do you think of his objection to having a hiking holiday?
3. He took to wearing black leather jeans.
4. We are looking forward to hearing from our English friends.
5. He had no real objection to drinking a glass of good wine.
6. I didn't object to sharing with my friends whatever I had.

At

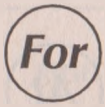
1. They were disappointed at not having been invited to the symposium.
2. Everyone couldn't but notice her surprise at seeing him at Don's.

3. She was clever at doing sums.
4. He was surprised at finding his wallet under the bed.
5. Sam is good at playing chess.

2

Translate the sentences into English.
Use a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction in the proper syntactical function.
Note the preposition preceding the gerund in different functions.

1. Ему не удалось получить разрешение *(to get permission)* поехать туда.
2. Нет смысла критиковать их.
3. Когда мы слушали его, мы чувствовали к нему жалость.
4. Ночь у нас прошла *(to pass)* в ожидании их звонка.
5. Его старшая сестра любит помогать ему решать задачи.
6. Это приведет *(to result)* к тому, что они приедут очень поздно.
7. При получении второй профессии ей приходилось и работать и учиться.
8. У нас не было колебаний в отношении заказа оборудования в Германии.



1. Начальник наказывал их за неподчинение *(to disobey)*.
2. Он отвечал за организацию факультетского вечера.
3. У него большие способности к восточным языкам (к изучению восточных языков).
4. Лучше не обижаться, если над тобой посмеиваются.

5. Не было необходимости распечатывать *(to print)* этот документ.
6. Отец часто упрекал детей за то, что они не заботились друг о друге.
7. Ваши извинения за то, что вы прогуляли занятия, вполне естественны.
8. Мне прислали интересный сборник стихов, чтобы я перевел его на английский.
9. Это прибор для измельчения *(to chop)* овощей.
10. Мы извинились за то, что помешали им.

Of

1. Он одобряет то, что ты получаешь вторую специальность?
2. Сама мысль о встрече с ним вызывала в ней радость *(to make one happy)*.
3. Она часто думала о том, чтобы купить маленький домик с садом.
4. Была какая-то надежда, что он получит стипендию.
5. Он устал ездить на работу на автобусе.
6. У нас не было намерения оскорблять тебя.
7. Хорошо ли гордиться тем, что много зарабатываешь?
8. У этой студентки есть шанс поехать в Бостонский университет.

To

1. Его возражение против твоего участия в коференции неразумно.
2. Мы с нетерпением ждем встречи с английскими студентами.

3. Летом отец согласился сдать *(to let)* дом.
4. Она стала носить туфли на высоких каблуках *(high-heeled shoes)*.
5. Мы не возражаем, если ты поживешь у нас.

PEOPLE SAY

To confess a fault freely is the next thing **to *being* innocent of it.**

S. Publilius. Maxims

At

1. Деб была разочарована тем, что не участвовала в выставке.
2. Они удивились, когда не обнаружили машину у дома.
3. Он хорошо разгадывал кроссворды *(to guess crossword puzzles)*.
4. Ее удивление, когда она увидела Джека в казино *(casino)*, было неподдельным.

3

Translate the sentences into Russian. Define the syntactical function of the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction. Choose the sentences with the same preposition used before the gerund in different syntactical functions. Put the numbers of the sentences in the corresponding box.

in	for	to	at
1			

см. стр. 267

1. We had no hesitation in choosing an expensive wedding present for them.
2. His parents never punish him for getting bad marks.
3. They agreed to doing the decorating every three years.
4. Jean was disappointed at her boyfriend's not taking her out to the play.
5. Nora succeeded in catching up with the group and passing her exam.
6. Richard apologized for not having taken part in the discussion.
7. Ann's parents do not approve of her having accepted Mike's proposal.
8. I like your idea of going to the library with me.
9. I can't understand your objection to my giving a seminar on Friday.
10. Gregory is skillful at writing limericks.
11. In questioning him the policeman realised that he wasn't guilty.
12. We've got a lot of stuff for cooking and doing the cleaning: a toaster for toasting bread, a mixer for mixing things, a vacuum cleaner for cleaning the floor and the carpets, a potato-peeler for peeling potatoes.
13. That's a clever way of running a college.
14. Kelly thought of arranging a party for her classmates.
15. They raise finance for drilling oil.
16. Our teacher objected to our not going to have a test.
17. Your lightmindedness may result in your lagging behind the group.
18. Mc. Donald is looking forward to seeing us in Scotland.
19. They invented a new filter for purifying water.
20. Barbara had no chance of her wages being raised.
21. Almost two hours were spent in cooking and laying the table.
22. He felt insulted for not being paid for his work.
23. Sarah helped me in making the pie.
24. Flora was surprised at being given such a nice necklace.
25. There's no hope of getting an invitation from them.
26. They organized a committee for arranging conferences.
27. In reading up for the seminar he passed his day off.

28. This is a most beautiful countryside for having a picnic there.
29. The reform may result in customers paying higher prices.
30. On coming to the party we saw lots of people there.
31. Jill wasn't used to having parties so often.
32. They rejected our request and in doing so they achieved their own goal.
33. Abraham's aunt relied on him and his wife giving her a lift.
34. She is unconscious of her husband having watched every step of hers.

4

Translate the sentences from Russian into English.
Use a gerund, a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction in the proper syntactical function.
Choose the proper preposition.
Note that the gerund can be used in different functions with the same preposition.

1. Ему удалось создать надежную фирму.
2. Измерительные приборы используются для измерения тока, давления, температуры и т. д.
3. Мы удивились, когда получили от них поздравительную открытку.
4. Его попросили помочь в строительстве дома.
5. Когда он забирался на гору, он повредил лодыжку *(ankle)*.
6. Есть какая-то надежда, что они помирятся *(to make it up)*?
7. Она с нетерпением ждет приезда родных.
8. Его возражения против того, чтобы ей помогали, трудно понять.
9. Его мать очень хорошо готовит салаты.
10. Он редко извиняется за свою грубость.
11. Когда общаешься с носителем языка, можно почерпнуть *(to pick up)* много интересных выражений.
12. Он придумал интересный способ быстро запоминать слова.
13. Ребенка наказали за то, что он разбил у соседки в доме окно.

14. Наконец они согласились поговорить с женихом дочери.
15. Есть ли смысл голосовать за него?
16. Он был разочарован тем, что его не представили хозяину дома.
17. Мы никогда не были против того, чтобы купить сыну компьютер.
18. Его прогулы привели к тому, что он не сдал экзамен.
19. Что ты думаешь по поводу его идеи купить небольшой котедж?
20. Здесь всегда продают инструменты для ремонта квартиры.
21. У меня не было никаких колебаний в выборе профессии.
22. Вся ее жизнь проходит в заботах о детях и внуках.
23. Эта жидкость используется для подкрахмаливания *(to starch)* белья.
24. Целый месяц ушел на ремонт квартиры.
25. Я слышал, что создается новый университет.
26. Ничто не может помешать ему сделать ей этот подарок.
27. Не полагайся на то, что ты получишь ответ быстро.
28. Не стоит обвинять ее в том, что она подвела тебя.
29. Их мечта – дать детям образование.
30. Мы были довольны тем, что нам разрешили сдать работу позже.
31. Вот еще одно средство избавиться от насекомых.
32. Поняв ее намерение, он удалился.

5

Translate the sentences into Russian.
Note the function of the gerund or the gerundial phrase.
Note the way of translating the gerund used in different syntactical functions into Russian.

1. He couldn't go out because of being involved in the project.
2. She keeps talking all the time.
3. Is it any good fixing your old watch?
4. Having a sober mind around might prove to be of some help.

5. The play is worth seeing.
6. Thank you for inviting us.
7. They insisted on taking him to the seaside.
8. Receiving guests is sometimes troublesome.
9. I don't mind joining you.
10. It's a waste of time arguing with her.
11. My sister decided to stay in town instead of going to the seaside.
12. The baby burst out crying.
13. She can't stand being praised.
14. I find it wonderful going to Britain every year.
15. His air of knowing something important made her worry.
16. What's the sense in deceiving them?
17. Betty doesn't need reminding of her duties.
18. Stop teasing her.
19. With a view of earning as much as possible they spent most of the summer working for some famous company.
20. He couldn't speak for having a bad cold in the head.
21. They couldn't help smiling when they saw their pet.
22. You can't prevent him from calling the police.
23. We got accustomed to having a swim in the ocean every morning.
24. Don avoids staying alone.
25. They don't feel like having a stranger in their house.
26. Sorry for having kept you waiting.
27. I remember buying my first ice-cream.
28. She was displeased with having failed the finals.
29. It's not advisable leaving your baby alone.
30. There's no knowing what she will do next.
31. He never counted on being helped.
32. Frank hates going to work by bus.
33. We appreciate being warmly welcomed in your town.
34. Paul enjoys fishing.
35. I don't feel like doing the washing by hand.
36. She prefers staying lazy in bed.
37. Excuse me for phoning you so often.
38. After doing your aerobics it's good to have a shower.
39. He is unconscious of having been impolite.

40. Hester wasn't used to washing up after each meal.
41. It won't be much fun listening to his silly stories.
42. Parents' duty has always been bringing up their children.
43. Giving his son some pocket money seemed OK.
44. What I like best is travelling all over the world.
45. In doing your research in Linguistics it's necessary to pick up a lot of examples from English books.
46. Before answering him ask for mother's advice.
47. Because of having caught cold he refused to give a concert.
48. The boy cried without stopping.
49. In talking with her he realised that she loved him.
50. All these tools were brought for cooking meat and fish.
51. In spite of having been warned against it she made up her mind to go out.
52. If someone is helpful, they help you by doing work for you or by giving you advice or information.

PEOPLE SAY

Seeing is ***believing***.*

English proverb

❖ ❖ ❖

The more we love our friends, the less we flatter them; it is **by *excusing* nothing that pure love shows itself**.

Author Unidentified

❖ ❖ ❖

By *asking* for the impossible
We obtain the best possible.

Author Unidentified

PEOPLE SAY

When I take up a work that I have read before (the oftener the better) I know what I have to expect. The satisfaction is not lessened **by being *anticipated***.

N. Hawthorne. The Plain Speaker

❖ ❖ ❖

Success generally depends **upon *knowing* how long it takes to succeed**.

Author Unidentified

❖ ❖ ❖

There are two sorts of constancy in love; the one comes from the constant discovery in our beloved of new grounds for love, and the other comes **from *making* it a point of honour to be constant**.

Author Unidentified

6

Translate the sentences into English.
Note the function of the gerund or the gerundial phrase.
Use the proper preposition before the gerund if necessary.

A
1. Они часто упрекали нас в пустой трате времени.
2. Его невозможно уговорить поступать на экономический факультет.
3. Моя обязанность — ежедневно вытирать пыль.
4. Мы начали изучать японский на третьем курсе.
5. Нет возможности покупать столько словарей.
6. Дерек не смог приехать, потому что сдавал выпускные экзамены.
7. Без изучения фонетики нельзя овладеть языком.
8. Эта фирма помогла в организации соревнований.

9. До прохождения теста я был уверен, что знаю английский.
10. Несмотря на свою занятость, они все же согласились приехать к нам в гости.
11. Бесполезно объяснять ей это.
12. Следующий этап – поступление в университет.
13. День прошел в заботах о больном.
14. Чувствуешь ли ты необходимость в том, чтобы попросить у него совета?
15. Нет никакой пользы в том, чтобы просто смотреть видеофильмы.
16. Продолжим наше обсуждение книги на следующем семинаре.
17. Войдя в сад, он заметил кого-то у дома.
18. Лучше бы они бросили заниматься боксом.
19. Не было никаких колебаний в отношении того, чтобы сообщить им о результатах поездки.
20. Не выходя из дома, Билл увидел в окно машину у подъезда.
21. Эта бумага предназначена для печати.
22. Лучшее решение для него – это преподавание языка.
23. Пение и игра на фортепьяно – хорошее занятие для девушки.
24. При подъеме в гору надо быть осторожным.
25. Он был разочарован тем, что его не спросили об этом.

PEOPLE SAY

The art **of *pleasing*** consists **in *being pleased*.**

W. Hazlitte. Round Table

❖ ❖ ❖

A man's good work is effected **by *doing* what he does**;
A woman's **by *being* what she is**.

Author Unidentified

B

1. У меня нет никаких возражений против того, чтобы слегка перекусить.
2. Если бы они не знали его, они бы не стали ему помогать.
3. Их принцип состоит в том, чтобы все делать самостоятельно.
4. Без усердной работы ты не добьешься результата.
5. Несмотря на то, что его однокурсники уже нашли работу, они не смогли помочь ему.
6. Вместо того, чтобы написать небольшой рассказ, она решила написать серию новелл о любви.
7. Рисование было его увлечением с юности.
8. С тех пор как я получил от него открытку, я ничего не слышал о нем.
9. Не было даже небольшой надежды поймать его перед отъездом.
10. Она была удивлена, обнаружив свое кольцо у подруги.
11. Он не возражал против того, чтобы подбросить нас до вокзала.
12. Анна никогда не думала о том, чтобы переехать в Лондон.
13. Это очень точный прибор для измерения давления.
14. Так как я увлекался бегом, я всегда смотрел Олимпийские соревнования по телевизору.
15. У него не было опыта в переводе поэзии.
16. Был издан закон с целью регулирования налога.
17. Джеймс позвонил, ничего не говоря о своих личных делах.
18. Я вспоминаю, как мы отдыхали у моря.
19. Некоторые люди не выносят, когда их обижают.
20. Нет объяснения ее безделью.
21. Они продолжали сопротивляться.
22. При переходе улицы сначала посмотрите налево.
23. Он был очень удивлен, когда услышал свое имя.
24. Ты будешь отвечать за организацию выпускного вечера.
25. Им надоело звонить тебе каждый вечер.
26. Майк очень хорошо играет в бадминтон.
27. У всех разные способности к изучению иностранных языков.

28. Тебе следует извиниться за то, что ты не пришел и не принес учебник.
29. Нет смысла обращаться к ним.
30. С нетерпением ждем от вас известий.
31. Мы согласились принять их.
32. Все преподаватели одобряют Ваше намерение совершенствоваться в английском.

PEOPLE SAY

He flattered himself **on *being* a man without any prejudices**; and this pretension itself is a very great prejudice.

Author Unidentified

❖ ❖ ❖

Education is an admirable thing, but it is well to remember from time to time that nothing that is worth ***knowing*** can be taught.

O. Wilde

❖ ❖ ❖

The stoical scheme **of *supplying* our wants by *looping off* our desires** is **like *cutting off* our feet when we want shoes**.

Author Unidentified

❖ ❖ ❖

Gracefulness is to the body what ***understanding*** is to the mind.

Author Unidentified

PEOPLE SAY

Between our birth and death we may touch ***understanding*** as a moth brushes a window with its wing.

C. Fry

❖ ❖ ❖

We are elitist[1], but not exclusive. And I'm not ashamed in the least **of *being* elitist**. All that means ***aiming* at the highest standards you can achieve**.

E. Anderson

❖ ❖ ❖

He thought ***marrying* her** would be **like *catching* a wild animal and *taming* it**.

Author Unidentified

KEEP SMILING

EDISON AND TELEGRAPH COMMUNICATION

The famous American inventor Th. A. Edison was rather deaf and said that in his courtship his deafness was a help. He taught the lady of his heart the Morse code and they got along much better than with spoken words – **by *tapping* words**.

❖ ❖ ❖

"That letter is too heavy," said the clerk in the post-office, **after *weighing* the letter**. "You'll have to put another stamp on it."

"It's no good ***doing* that**," said the boy. "If I put another stamp on it, that will make it still heavier."

[1]elitist – принадлежащий к избранной части общества.

KEEP SMILING

One of the Kembles made his first appearance on the stage as an opera singer. His voice was, however, so bad, that at a rehearsal the conductor of the orchestra called out: "Mr. Kemble! You are murdering the music!"

"My dear sir," was the quiet rejoinder, "it is better to murder it outright, than to keep on ***beating*** it as you do."

❖ ❖ ❖

In one of college classes the professor was unable to stay for the class, so he placed a sign on the door which read as follows: "Professor Blank will be unable to meet his classes today."

Some college lad, seeing his chance to display his sense of humour **after *reading* the notice**, walked up and erased the "c" in the word "classes." The professor noticing the laughter wheeled around, walked back, looked at the student, then at the sign with the "c" erased – calmly walked up and erased the "l" in "lasses," looked at the flabbergasted student and proceeded on his way.

❖ ❖ ❖

IT SPEAKS FOR ITSELF

An art critic is shown two pictures in a private picture-gallery. One of them is by an old master, the other is a modern creation. The art critic takes a long look at the former and **without *uttering* a single word** turns to the latter. He at once starts ***praising* it**.

"Why did you pass the other picture **without *saying* a word of praise**?" somebody asks him. "It requires **nothing *being said* about it**," answers the art critic. "It speaks for itself, while the other certainly stands in need **of *boosting***."

VIII. EXERCISES

DIFFERENT SYNTACTICAL FUNCTIONS OF THE GERUNDIAL CONSTRUCTION

1

Translate the sentences into Russian.
Define the syntactical function of the gerundial construction.
Note the way of rendering the gerundial construction used in different syntactical functions in Russian.[1]

1. Your daughter doing the dishes after meals may save your time.
2. The best thing is Fred's being ready to give you a hand whenever you need it.
3. They never mind their car being borrowed by their friends.
4. Your objection to Julie and Ann taking a trip to the mountains can't be ignored.
5. They have exchanged letters with a view to their representatives meeting to discuss the problems of their countries' cooperation.
6. You can make her happy by her son being given back to her.
7. Because of the exchange rate being too low they made up their mind not to buy foreign currency.
8. After the horse being sold he had to sell the sheep.
9. One can't do anything without the data being fed into the computer.
10. Despite your parents teaching you good manners your behaviour leaves much to be desired.
11. It's no good your room-mate making dinner for you.
12. Instead of your receiving her every weekend you could just give her a call every day.
13. The only way out was Rudolph's fetching a bucket of water from the pond.

[1]See the table p. 257 – 258.

14. I understand his hesitation in his relatives being informed of the incident.
15. The programme was shown for them getting more feedback from the viewers.
16. He managed to sell the car for his agent having arranged everything for him.
17. She finds it awful him having applied for another job.
18. Before the dish being cooked you are supposed to buy a bottle of red wine.
19. Can you rely on your children looking after you when you get old?
20. They suggested our visiting the Hermitage and the Russian museum.
21. There's no use in them going there by coach.
22. They often arrive very late without their chief reproaching them for that.
23. We can't insist on the lecturer giving a lecture on Saturday.
24. It seemed unnatural crocodiles and snakes appearing in this area.
25. Do you realise the necessity of the farmers growing more vegetables?
26. I can't count on someone helping me.

2

Point out the gerundial construction.
Define its syntactical function.
Note the nominal element preceding the gerund or the gerundial phrase.
Say what the nominal element is expressed by.
Make sure that the doer of the action denoted by the nominal element and the subject are different.

MODEL

1. It's **like *your house* being ruined one day**.
The gerundial construction is used as ***predicative***.
The nominal element denotes ***a lifeless thing*** and is expressed by ***a noun in the common case***.

см. стр. 280

MODEL

2. She liked ***it (the dish)*** **being cooked without milk**.
   The gerundial construction is used as ***direct object (complex object)***.
   The nominal element denotes ***a lifeless thing*** and is expressed by ***a personal pronoun*** **in** ***the objective case*** (a noun in the common case).

3. His jokes take ***some*** **getting used to**.
   The gerundial construction is used as ***direct object (complex object)***.
   The nominal element is expressed by ***an indefinite pronoun***.

   They approved of ***his/Robert's/him*** **collecting ancient vases**.
   The gerundial construction is used as ***prepositional complex object***.
   The nominal element denotes ***a living being*** and is expressed by ***a possessive pronoun/a proper name in the genitive case/a personal pronoun in the objective case***.

4. The idea **of** ***a woman of this age*** **taking part in the competition** couldn't but surprise us.
   The gerundial construction is used as ***attribute***.
   The nominal element denotes ***a living being*** and is expressed by ***a noun + a postmodifying attribute***.

5. We can't have a meeting here **without** ***a table and fifty chairs*** **being fetched**.
   The gerundial construction is used as ***adverbial modifier of condition***.
   The nominal element denotes ***a lifeless thing*** and is expressed by ***two nouns in the common case***.

1. It makes all the difference your putting duty before pleasure.
2. We appreciate their paying us on time.

3. He dislikes all this fussing over health.
4. They objected to Jack's dropping out of the university.
5. We examined the possibility of some students being given a grant.
6. His younger sister thought it exciting him and his classmates going to Britain.
7. The discussion may result in Bob Truman and Bill Shark being elected.
8. But for him being a drunkard his children and his wife wouldn't suffer.
9. In spite of the competition being so stiff he was lucky to get a place.
10. You can't get him to do it without his wife pushing him into this.
11. The weather is so changeable that we can't rely on its being fine tomorrow.
12. Your leaving the car and walking for a change will relax you.
13. I heard of the diesel engine being long-lasting.
14. He chose to return to the relative peace of his childhood village after someone telling him that his house was to be sold.
15. She went to visit some of her relatives for a few days because of her aunt, a woman of seventy, being seriously ill.
16. To my relief, he found the suggestion of the computers being given to the children acceptable.
17. We couldn't do anything because of them showing reluctance to support these measures.
18. It's like people searching through the bombed remains of the house.
19. He was displeased with the girl of this sort having been chosen by his son.
20. You can't solve problems by your friends doing things instead of you.
21. It's no good Sid and Tom painting the door together.
22. The house is too old and they will insist on its being restored.
23. The teacher was ignorant of the students of this group cribbing off each other.
24. Everybody interfering with her affairs bothered her.

KEEP SMILING

Viola was trying to sing and James was trying to read.

Finally he decided to give her a hint that **her *singing* so loudly** was annoying him.

Looking up from his book, he said: "I think you might be able to make a living singing."

"That is very flattering," she said.

"Not at all," was his reply. "People might be willing to pay you to stop singing."

This was followed by silence.

3

Make up your own Russian sentences and translate them into English using a gerundial construction in different syntactical functions.
Make sure that the doer of the action denoted by the gerund (*the nominal element)* and the subject are different.
Use different kinds of the nominal element.

MODEL

Преподаватели настаивали **на том, чтобы *студенты* сдавали экзамены вовремя**.
The teachers insisted on ***the students*** **taking exams on time.** ***(object)***

Преподаватели настаивали **на том, чтобы *Дик Смит* сдавал экзамены вовремя**.
..... ***Dick Smith*** .....
..... ***Dick Smith's*** .....

см. стр. 283

MODEL

Преподаватели настаивали **на том, чтобы *он* сдавал экзамены вовремя**.
..... ***his/him*** .....

Преподаватели настаивали **на том, чтобы *экзамены* сдавали вовремя**.
..... ***exams* being taken** .....

Преподаватели настаивали **на том, чтобы *экзамен/его* сдали вовремя**.
..... ***the exam/its*** .....

Преподаватели настаивали **на том, чтобы *экзамены и зачеты* сдавали вовремя**.
..... ***exams and tests*** .....

Преподаватели настаивали **на том, чтобы *экзамен по грамматике* сдавали вовремя**.
..... ***the exam in Grammar*** .....

4

Translate the sentences into English.
Use a gerundial construction in the proper syntactical functions.
Use the proper preposition if necessary.

1. То, что ты пытаешься успокоить их, абсолютно правильно.
2. Он терпеть не мог все эти споры и ссоры.
3. Не отвергай их предложение отправить твою мать в санаторий.
4. Вместо того, чтобы твоим родителям тратить деньги на магнитофон, ты мог бы заработать сам.

5. Этот перевод нельзя публиковать, если ты не покажешь его автору рассказа.
6. Несмотря на то, что редактор внимательно читал рукопись, ошибка не была замечена.
7. Они часто покупают своим детям подарки, но дети не благодарят их при этом.
8. После того как заслушали доклад, ученому задали много вопросов.
9. Эту машину можно отремонтировать, поменяв эти две детали.
10. Мы согласны с тем, чтобы ваши друзья пожили у нас месяц-другой.
11. То, что она сразу приняла его предложение, доказывает, что она любит его.
12. То, что она провалилась на экзаменах, просто ужасно.
13. Перед тем как пишется картина на историческую тему, каждый художник продумывает сюжет и собирает материал.
14. Молодожены отправились в Париж, потому что там жили их близкие родственники.
15. То, что твой день рождения приходится на воскресенье, совсем меняет дело.

REVISION

1 **Make up sentences choosing their parts from columns I and II.**
Define the syntactical function of the gerund or the gerundial phrase.

MODEL

It's no good *lending* **him money.**
It's no use *buying* **a lottery ticket.**

I	II
1. It's no good	1. lending him money.
2. It's no use	2. trying to run away.
3. It will be little use	3. going out in such weather.
4. It won't be much fun	4. speaking to him under the circumstances.
5. It wasn't much use	5. smoking.
6. It won't be any good	6. buying a lottery ticket.
7. It won't be any use	7. complaining.
8. It was great fun	8. asking her to marry him.
	9. going to the disco.
	10. attending the lecture.
	11. telling them the story.
	12. risking your health like that.

2

Match the parts of the sentences.
Choose the proper subject expressed by a gerundial phrase for each predicate in the right-hand column.

1. Going there without permission
2. Giving up smoking
3. Being unlucky in love
4. Being interrupted by his children
5. Playing football
6. Travelling to London
7. Having a closely-knit family
8. Crossing the street here
9. Knowing English
10. Writing a textbook in tandem

1. makes him angry.
2. is easier than doing it alone.
3. was impossible.
4. is an outdoor activity.
5. is absolutely necessary.
6. is a dream of any woman.
7. is dangerous.
8. makes one feel sad.
9. can be exciting.
10. can help you on your business trips abroad.

3

Match the parts of the sentences.
Choose the proper predicative expressed by a gerundial phrase.

1. My duty is
2. The driver's next step was
3. The first thing to do was
4. Jill's dream was
5. Dick's idea was
6. His last chance is
7. The last thing she wants to do is
8. The policeman's task was

1. deceiving you.
2. looking after my younger sister.
3. trying to find the right woman.
4. checking the engine.
5. cleaning the flat in the morning.
6. taking care of people.
7. making her a proposal before she leaves.
8. lying in the sun and doing nothing.

9. The first duty of the state is
10. The engineer's idea was

9. designing a special measuring instrument.
10. questioning the witnesses.

4

Match the parts of the sentences.
Choose the proper part of the compound verbal phasal predicate expressed by a gerund or a gerundial phrase.

1. His wife is happy that he gave up
2. The two friends went on
3. The man sighed and ceased
4. The sick man kept on
5. The baby burst out
6. The kids began
7. Husband and wife stopped
8. Mrs. Snack continued
9. Bill finished
10. Jane chose the blue blouse and started

1. moaning.
2. getting dressed.
3. drinking.
4. chatting.
5. speaking.
6. teaching Maths.
7. playing hide-and-seek.
8. mending his car.
9. quarrelling.
10. crying.

5

Match the parts of the sentences.
Choose the proper subject modified by an attribute expressed by a gerund or a gerundial phrase.

1. The art of listening
2. The idea of being under a wife's thumb
3. Her thought of getting a divorce
4. A little hope of visiting his native England
5. Mr. Lamb's objection to finding a new manager
6. Jack's habit of snoring
7. A wonderful instrument for reducing noise

1. was invented by this scientist.
2. helped him survive.
3. destroyed their plans.
4. made his wife sick.
5. doesn't appeal to a man.
6. is a real gift.
7. made her husband suffer.

6

Translate the sentences into Russian.
Note different syntactical functions of the noun modified by a gerundial phrase used as attribute.
Define the function of the noun modified:

1. the subject,
2. a predicative,
3. an object,
4. part of an adverbial modifier.

Note the way of rendering the gerund-attribute in Russian.

1. We didn't know of their intention of buying a flat.
2. Tourists were waiting outside the palace in the hope of getting a look at the queen.
3. I suddenly had the idea of cutting the hole in the door and trying to unlock it from the inside.
4. It is a very clever way of selling cars.
5. Can you remember any sign at all of strong personal liking for you on his side?
6. He didn't want to answer my question about re-opening the factory in the near future.
7. I never overcame the sense of being out of place, of being an outsider.
8. I spent a week making calls to my partners and thinking of my chance of persuading them to do the business.
9. Plasticine is a soft coloured substance for making little models.
10. Will you do me the pleasure of joining me for a drink?
11. But for his experience in programming he wouldn't be able to write such clever programmes.
12. Because of her habit of staying up late she felt unwell.
13. This is a wonderful opportunity of making as much profit as we can.
14. All the time people are seeking a means of prolonging life.
15. His thought of promoting their business bored him very much.
16. There was no excuse for failing the oral section of the exam.
17. It was one of the suggested possibilities of joining the feasting.

7

Use a gerund or a gerundial phrase as attribute after a noun in different syntactical functions in the sentences of your own.
Define the syntactical function of the noun.

MODEL

1. **The idea *of translating this poem*** seems very interesting.
   the gerundial phrase ***of translating this poem*** is used to modify *the subject* **the idea**.
2. What attracted him so much is **the idea *of translating this poem*.**
   the gerundial phrase ***of translating this poem*** is used to modify *the predicative* **the idea**.
3. I like **the idea *of translating this poem*.**
   the gerundial phrase ***of translating this poem*** is used to modify *the direct object* **the idea**.
4. The dean objected to the students' **idea *of postponing the exam*.**
   the gerundial phrase ***of postponing the exam*** is used to modify *the prepositional object* **the idea**.

8

Match the parts of the sentences.
Choose the proper gerundial phrase used as adverbial modifier of manner.

1. One can enrich one's English vocabulary	1. without even sleeping.
2. I used to study all day, sometimes	2. by travelling to English-speaking countries.
3. The day was spent	3. by using a washing machine.
4. You can easily do the washing	4. by taking extra music practice.
5. She can make a strong impression on you	5. without limping badly.

см. стр. 290

6. You can improve your piano skills
7. Most of his time is spent
8. She made these little things
9. He taught the boy to swim
10. The disabled person could hardly walk

6. in sitting in front of the computer.
7. without using an air-cushion.
8. in playing football.
9. by casting them from clay and painting them.
10. by dressing herself up in fancy clothes.

9

Match the parts of the sentences.
Choose the proper adverbial modifier of time expressed by a gerundial phrase.

1. On recognising my friend's wife
2. Since getting his first prize
3. In taking your English exam
4. After getting your visa
5. At hearing her name
6. In getting off a bus
7. Before buying a car
8. After walking three miles
9. Since buying a washing machine

1. we have never sent the linen to the laundry.
2. you can go and buy a ticket.
3. I normally use the front door.
4. he attended driving classes.
5. the old woman felt very tired.
6. she felt shy.
7. he hasn't got any more.
8. I said hello to her.
9. you can't speak Russian.

10

Match the parts of the sentences.
Choose the proper adverbial modifier of reason expressed by a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction.

1. Ann is keen on the history of England
2. She eats a lot of rice
3. He was put on a diet
4. Some people prefer to keep dogs

1. because of gaining weight.
2. for fear of waking him up.
3. not from his little son liking only fat cats.
4. owing to making communication faster.

5. The cats that live in Sam's flat are all fat
6. The judge dismissed the question
7. The computer is so popular all over the world
8. She can't teach him how to play the flute
9. They decided not to call him so early
10. We couldn't hear each other's words

5. on account of its being too personal.
6. owing to its being healthy food.
7. for the wind blowing.
8. because of dogs making good pets.
9. for his having no interest in music at all.
10. for having English ancestors.

11

Match the parts of the sentences.
Choose the proper adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances expressed by a gerund or a gerundial phrase.

1. Have a snack at a pizza-hut
2. You can make a skirt yourself
3. He'd better give up smoking
4. When I was a student I could do
5. You sometimes can't talk on the phone with them
6. In this situation we couldn't do
7. Tom can't fight
8. We can get by
9. Please, stay in and help me
10. Send the linen to the laundry

1. instead of being a chain-smoker.
2. without having a lot of money.
3. instead of going to Mc. Donald's.
4. instead of buying this expensive one.
5. without getting good advice.
6. without being cut off.
7. without having red caviar for breakfast.
8. without getting a black eye.
9. instead of doing the washing at home.
10. instead of going to the party tonight.

12

Match the parts of the sentences.
Choose the proper adverbial modifier of concession expressed by a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction.

1. You can't interfere in this matter
2. She took no notice of the boy
3. Jim decided to go to work
4. The children liked their teacher
5. They enjoyed the pop-concert
6. I didn't see much of him
7. Mr. Snack wasn't elected
8. Bobby Fish liked hunting
9. Nobody answered the phone
10. Phil couldn't compose music
11. She couldn't sleep

1. despite having a terrible headache.
2. in spite of her being very demanding.
3. despite him being your close relative.
4. in spite of the child staring at her.
5. in spite of him living nearby.
6. despite preferring classical music.
7. despite being very tired.
8. despite our voting for him.
9. despite being good at playing the piano and the guitar.
10. in spite of someone being home.
11. in spite of Mr. Fish being keen on fishing.

13

Match the parts of the sentences.
Choose the proper adverbial modifier of condition expressed by a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction.

1. You can't make the room look nice
2. We wouldn't have seen the famous pictures
3. He wouldn't cough
4. She couldn't learn to play the piano

1. but for his smoking.
2. in case of having no instrument.
3. without earning much.
4. without doing the cleaning regularly.

5. Dan will study at university	5. but for Alan having taken us to the museum.
6. Jane can't pay for the course	6. in case of the door being locked properly.
7. Nobody can get in	7. in the event of getting a grant.
8. They can't look after their grandfather	8. but for having been inattentive.
9. Could you lend me some money	9. without having a nurse.
10. She would have noticed the pillar	10. in the event of their paying you on time?

14

Mat the parts of the sentences.
Choose the proper adverbial modifier of purpose expressed by a gerundial phrase or a gerundial construction.

1. People go for a walk	1. for taking a bus to Oxford street.
2. We go to a shoe shop	2. with a view to taking some photographs of different places of interest.
3. He parked the car	3. for learning to swim.
4. She eats a good breakfast	4. with the object of showing him some exotic animals.
5. They went sightseeing	5. for buying a pair of shoes.
6. Brian's mother took him to the zoo	6. for not feeling hungry until lunch.
7. Tom went to the swimming pool	7. for not being caught in the rain.
8. He bought a dog	8. with the object of saving money.
9. We take an umbrella	9. for having a gulp of fresh air.
10. He painted the house himself	10. for improving one's English.
11. One should read English books	11. for his son taking regular walks.

15

Translate the sentences into Russian.
State the syntactical function of the gerund, the gerundial phrase or the gerundial construction.

1. He has only a one in ten chance of being reunited with his family.
2. The dean didn't object to raising the scholarship.
3. A vagrant is a person who has no home or money, and who lives by going from place to place and begging or stealing.
4. On being reminded of her promise to spend the weekend with her children she decided to take them to the fair.
5. Don's business was repairing furniture.
6. There was no pleasing Mike's wife.
7. I don't feel like going out.
8. My elder brother kept on laughing at me.
9. The boy felt embarrassed for deceiving his parents.
10. Instead of following in his father's steps he chose a political career.
11. Despite being interrupted by his wife he managed to tell the story from beginning to end.
12. In her thirties she had no difficulty in finding jobs.
13. Thank you for supporting us.
14. My first thought was giving them a call.
15. It's no good watching TV for hours.
16. After coming back home she had a bite and gave a ring to her friend.
17. Derek couldn't come because of having been sent to Liverpool.
18. There is little hope of getting this CD.
19. I'll never forget being taken to the Rotary Club.
20. He managed to paint her portrait without using her photo.
21. Since reading the stories by E. Hemingway he hasn't read anything in the original.
22. He gave up drinking and started a new life.

23. Having a short break is quite necessary.
24. I don't think the man deserves punishing.
25. The most important thing for him was starting his own business.
26. At seeing him at the theatre she realised that he hadn't left for London.
27. Brian never spent his weekend without having a drink in a pub.
28. There's no accounting for his pessimism.
29. The next step was choosing the right direction.
30. The whole month was spent in looking for the burglars.
31. It will make all the difference inviting this couple for lunch.
32. The company bought three cottages with a view to letting them in summer.
33. Susan took to going to the sports club.
34. In case of getting the book let me know.
35. In spite of listening to English tapes for hours he couldn't get rid of his accent.
36. Without having a computer you can't get the necessary information.
37. Every week Laura sent him a letter for giving him emotional support.
38. Before buying a PC ask for an expert's advice.
39. He didn't tell you about it for fear of being accused of the crime.
40. Our daughter was enjoying the experience of living alone.
41. She started warming up the soup.
42. He prepared himself for the race by doing exercises.
43. He never hands in a test without checking it over first.
44. Charles got the TV to work by adjusting the antenna.
45. They had spent the last three hours in going from hotel to hotel.
46. I have always been afraid of walking through a forest at night.
47. We walked very carefully through the grass as we were scared of being bitten by a snake.

16

Read the texts.
Give the correct form of the verb in parenthesis: a gerund or an infinitive.
Use the proper form of the pronoun.

ASKING FOR TROUBLE

It must have been about two in the morning when I returned home. I tried ***(wake up)*** my wife by ***(ring)*** the door-bell, but she was fast asleep, so I got a ladder from the shed in the garden, put it against the wall and began ***(climb)*** towards the bedroom window. I was almost there when a sarcastic voice below said, "I don't think the windows need ***(clean)*** at this time of the night." I looked down and nearly fell off the ladder when I saw a policeman. I immediately regretted ***(answer)*** in the way I did, but I said, "I enjoy ***(clean)*** windows at night".

"So do I," answered the policeman in the same tone. "Excuse my ***(interrupt)*** you. I hate ***(interrupt)*** a man when he is busy ***(work)***, but would you mind ***(come)*** with me to the station?"

"Well, I'd prefer ***(stay)*** here," I said. "You see, I've forgotten my key."

"Your what?" he called.

"My key!" I shouted.

Fortunately the shout woke my wife who opened the window just as the policeman had started ***(climb)*** towards me.

PERSISTENT

I crossed the street ***(avoid)*** ***(meet)*** him. But he saw me and came running towards me. It was no use ***(pretend)*** that I had not seen him, so I waved to him. I never enjoy ***(meet)*** Bert Dykes. He never has anything ***(do)***. No matter how busy you are, he always insists on ***(come)*** with you. I had to think of the way of ***(prevent)*** him from ***(follow)*** me around all morning.

"Hullo," I said. "Fancy ***(meet)*** you here!"

"Hullo, Elizabeth." Bert answered. "I was just wondering how ***(spend)*** the morning until I saw you. You are not busy ***(do)*** anything, are you?"

"No, not at all. I'm going to..."

"Would you mind ***(I, come)*** with you?" he asked, before I had finished ***(speak)***.

"Not at all if you are not against ***(go)*** to the dentist, as I'm going there."

"Then I'll go with you. There's always plenty ***(read)*** in the ***(wait)*** room."

(After L. G. Alexander
from "Practice and Progress," Longman. 1978)

17

Find the gerunds, the gerundial phrases or the gerundial constructions in the following texts.
Define their syntactical functions.
Translate the texts into Russian.

PEOPLE SAY PEOPLE SAY

The world is a fine place and worth fighting for.

E. Hemingway. For Whom the Bell Tolls

❖ ❖ ❖

Talking and eloquence are not the same;
To speak and to speak well, are two things.

B. Jonson. Discoveries

He's a wonderful talker, who has the art of telling you nothing in a great harangue.

Author Unidentified

❖ ❖ ❖

Our progress will not be improved by dwelling upon the theories.

Author Unidentified

❖ ❖ ❖

One can't make an omelette without breaking eggs.*

English saying

❖ ❖ ❖

There is no Democratic or Republican way of delivering the mail. There is only the right way.

R. Nixon

❖ ❖ ❖

Our doubts are traitors
And make us lose the good we oft might win
By fearing to attempt.

W. Shakespeare.
Measure for Measure, Act 1, Sc. 4

❖ ❖ ❖

I have so much to do every morning that I don't have any time to think about getting old.

C. D. Pepper

KEEP SMILING KEEP SMILING

THE HOT POTATO

Once upon a time there lived a cow,
Dot by name, who was very fond of hot potatoes.
One day she swallowed a whole potato without chewing it and it was so hot inside her, that it hurt, and she began to cry.
Great big tears rolled down her cheeks.
The farmer took a pail to catch the tears in, so that they will not make the floor all wet.
"What's the matter, Dot?" he said.
"I swallowed a hot potato," said Dot.
"You poor thing," said the farmer, "open your mouth."
Dot opened her mouth and smoke came out.
"What shall I do?" thought the farmer.
Then he picked up the pail of tears and poured it into Dot's throat.
There was some noise there, and Dot smiled because she felt better.

❖ ❖ ❖

AIR PANCAKES

George met his pal Bill who was an enthusiastic pilot. While discussing flying George said: "I hear you've put a little kitchen in your plane, Bill. How do you like cooking in the air?"

"Fine," replied Bill, "especially making pancakes."

"Why pancakes in particular?"

"Because you can just put them on and then loop the loop," replied Bill.

A motorcycle policeman was about to write up a ticket charging a motorist with speeding, when a woman in the back seat who could restrain herself no longer, began this tirade.

"There! Didn't I tell you to watch out? But you kept on speeding, getting out of line, not blowing your horn, passing stop streets and everything else all morning. Didn't I tell you'd get caught? Didn't I? Didn't I?"

"Who is this woman?" asked the officer, with pencil poised.

"My wife," said the motorist grimly.

"Drive on, my friend!" exclaimed the officer, pityingly, as he proceeded to tear up the ticket. "Drive on – and may the Lord have mercy on you!"

❖ ❖ ❖

PAT AND THE RATTLESNAKE

Pat and Mike never saw any snakes. But they heard a lot about snakes; how dangerous they were, especially rattlesnakes.

One day they decided to visit their friends who lived in the neighbouring village. They started off but soon they lost their way. So they had to stop at a farm and ask the way. The farmer told them how they had to go and then shouted after them, "Be careful, boys, when you go down. We killed a big rattlesnake down that way a few days ago."

So they went on watching both sides of the path, frightened to death. Soon they came to a fence. Mike climbed over. Then he turned around to examine the other side of the fence. Pat was climbing over, and his big toe went through a knothole in the fence. Mike saw Pat's toe and he shouted, "Pat! Stand still! I see a rattlesnake!" Pat was so frightened that he couldn't move. Mike picked up a big stick and stuck Pat's big toe with it. At this very moment Pat shouted, "Hit him again, Mike! He has bitten me!".

CHINESE DANCE

You wouldn't think of Chinese fan
Could dance, but in her way she can.
To strange expedients she is put
Because she only has one foot,
Where other folks have left and right,
And her one foot is bound up tight.
With courage her confusion hiding
She bobs and bows instead of gliding.
Her dainty gestures never stop,
Her little foot goes hip hop hop,
And this must be a harder trick
Than dancing on a pogo stick.

O. Nash

❖ ❖ ❖

Two little kittens one stormy night,
Began to quarrel, and then to fight;
One had a mouse, the other had none,
This was the way the fight was begun.

...I told you before, 't was a stormy night,
When these two kittens began to fight.
The old woman took her sweeping broom,
And swept the kittens right out of the room.

The ground was covered with frost and snow,
And the poor little kittens had nowhere to go;
So they both lay down on the mat at the door,
While the old woman finished sweeping the floor.

Then they both crept in, as quiet as mice,
All wet with snow, and cold as ice.
For they found it was better, that stormy night,
To lie down and sleep than to quarrel and fight.

HOW THEY ARGUED ABOUT THE SHEEP

There were two men of Gotham, and one of them was going to Nottingham to buy sheep. The other was coming from the market, and they passed each other on Nottingham Bridge.

"Where are you going?" said the one who came from Nottingham.

"I'm going to Nottingham," said the other, "to buy sheep."

"And which way will you bring them home?"

"Over this bridge."

"You will not."

"But I will."

And each got red with rage.

They did not notice another man who had come up to the bridge with his horse, a sack of flour on its back.

"You're a fine pair, fighting about sheep, and not a single sheep between you. Come and help me to pull this sack on to my shoulders."

So the two men stopped quarrelling and helped the man to pull the sack from his horse's back to his own. Then he went to the side of the bridge and tipped all the flour out of the sack into the river.

"Now, how much flour is there in my sack?" he said.

"None at all," said the others.

"Right," said the man, "and there are as many brains in your two heads as flour in my sack!"

THE OLD MAN AND HIS PIG

There was once a village. The people who lived there were not very clever. The wisest man had a pig that he loved very much. And when he had to go away, he took the door of his house with him, so that thieves could not break into the house and steal his pig.

см. стр. 303

One day he was carrying his door on his back and met an old woman. "Why do you carry that door on your back?" the old woman asked.

"So that thieves will not break into my house and steal my pig," answered the wise old man.

"Well, I have nothing in my own house worth taking," said the old woman, "but I have a wonderful garden. I'll go back and take the gate, and then nobody will be able to get into my garden and take my potatoes."

So the old woman went back and took her gate and put it on her shoulders.

Soon the old man came back home. He began to call his pig. But the pig didn't come.

"That's strange," the old man said. "Nobody has taken it, because nobody could break into the house, because there was no door."

Soon he came to the old woman's house.

"Have you seen my pig?" he asked.

"No, I haven't seen your pig. But somebody has been in my garden and has dug up all my vegetables. I cannot understand how it happened, because I took the gate with me."

The old man thought and thought. "I know," he said. "I should have taken my pig with me, instead of taking the door."

"And I," the old woman said, "should have taken my vegetables with me instead of taking the gate." "That's what we'll do from now on," they both said. That's what they did, of course.

As the old man carried his pig all the time, it got thin, and the old woman's garden didn't grow.

"What does that matter so long as our things are safe?" the old man very wisely said. And all the silly people of the village agreed he was right, and very, very wise.

MRS. TWIDDLE'S GOLD

There was once an old woman called Mrs. Twiddle, whose kitchen chimney needed sweeping. She poked her brush up, and ten pieces of gold came down with the soot. How surprised and glad Mrs. Twiddle was!

So she put the gold on the table and ran out to tell her friends.

"Well, well," said everyone, "that is good fortune for you. You must keep it safely, for there are robbers about. Come with us and we'll show you a strong bag in the village shop. You can buy it and put your money in."

So Mrs. Twiddle went to the shop and bought the bag. "It will keep my money safe," she said.

"But thieves can easily carry the bag away," said the shopkeeper. "Buy a good and strong box to put the bag in. What do you think of this one? It's the heaviest I have." "I will have it," said the woman. "My gold will be safe there."

"You had better buy a new lock and key for your door. Then you and your money will be quite safe," said her friends. "I will have that lock and key," said Mrs. Twiddle.

The shopkeeper and his son carried the box. Mrs. Twiddle carried the bag, and in it she put the lock and key. When they reached home, the shopkeeper asked to be paid.

Mrs. Twiddle paid him and he went away. Then she thought she would put her gold into the bag, and the bag into the box, where it would be safe. But she couldn't find a single piece of gold anywhere! Do you know what she had done with it?

THE USEFUL DRAGON

Once upon a time there lived a dragon whose name was Komodo. He could breathe fire, and all the people who lived nearby were afraid of him. When they heard him or saw him, they ran away and hid. They could always hear him because he had six feet, and wore three pairs of shoes, and each of his shoes creaked.

One day he met a little girl who wasn't afraid of him.

"Why are you so fierce? Why do you breathe fire when you see anybody?" she said.

"Well," said Komodo, "I never really thought about it. Shall I stop it?"

"Yes, please," said the little girl whose name was Susie.

"All right," said Komodo, "I'll try."

They said good-bye to each other, and Susie went home. It was beginning to get dark. Susie was surprised because all the lamps in the town were not lit. She found out that it was because of the lamplighter whose name was Charlie. He hadn't lit the street lamps.

He was still in bed. He was tired after lighting the lamps the night before.

The mayor of the town was very angry. "What must I do about that?" he thought.

Then Susie had an idea. She ran to Komodo's cave, brought him to the town and he breathed fire on each lamp and lit it.

How glad the people were! Now they could see the dragon was a friendly animal. And after that Komodo came and lit the lamps every time when Charlie had his holiday.

ABNORMALITY

A man had enlisted in the Army after serving with the Navy for four years. Upon his enlistment, he had to undergo the same physical and mental examinations as any other Army recruit.

After his interview with the Army psychiatrist, he read the note which the psychiatrist had written on his medical report: "Four years' naval service. No other psychiatric abnormalities."

❖ ❖ ❖

VULGARITY

Walter Scott once happened to hear his daughter speak with contempt of something she considered vulgar.

"My love," he said, "I blame you for using a word you don't understand. Vulgar means common and nothing worth having or caring for is uncommon."

APPENDIX

1. EVERYDAY GERUND

1 (I'm) sorry for being late.

2 Sorry for troubling you.

3 I'm ever so sorry for making such a noise last night.

4 I'm very sorry for losing my temper last night.

5 Sorry for having kept you waiting.

6 Excuse my interrupting you.

7 Do excuse me for looking so untidy.

8 I apologize for causing so much trouble.

9 I do apologize for not letting you know before.

10 Thank you for coming (to see us).

11 Thanks for letting me know.

12 I appreciate your helping us.

13 I'm looking forward
- to hearing from you soon.
- to your coming to see us.

14 We look forward to visiting you.

15 Do you mind
- sitting here?
- waiting for me?
- my opening the window?

16 Would you mind
- sharing your book with me?
- not making so much noise?

17 I don't mind waiting.

18 I know it's difficult but don't give up. Keep trying.

19 It's no use arguing about trifles.

20 Stop arguing!

21 Stop talking!

22 Please stop being so noisy.

23 Seeing you is always a pleasure.

24 There's no accounting for his sulks.

25 We can't afford buying a house.

26 I don't remember having ever seen you before.

27 I remember seeing you once.

28 I remember reading about it in the paper.

29 I remember you saying you like English poetry.

30 I'll never forget visiting London.

31 It makes no diference your coming or not.

32 I suggest (our) going to the cinema tonight.

33 I don't feel like
- going out tonight.
- going to bed yet.

34 Do you feel like giving a party tonight?

35 It's no good going out in hot weather.

36 There's no getting out of it.

37 He can't stand being laughed at.

38 I can't help feeling sorry about that.

39 Please give me a ring before leaving London.

40 The floor wants washing./ My shirt needs mending.

41 The book is worth reading.

42 It's not worth quarrelling about.

43 What about
- having some tea?
- having a walk in the park?
- spending a quiet evening at home?
- going to the pictures?

44 How about going to the party tonight?

45 Will you go shopping this afternoon?

46 Let's go camping.

47 Couldn't you help me lay the table instead of talking?

48 Did you enjoy playing chess with my son?

49 What do you like doing in your spare time?

50 I enjoy travelling very much indeed.

51 I like reading novels.

52 I'm keen on playing tennis.

53 I don't like driving in the rush hour.

54 I do dislike being kept waiting.

55 Make sure you avoid going out alone at night.

56 She talked me into taking a week's holiday.

57 It goes without saying.

58 I feel worried about having so much work to do.

59 She feels really worried about having to stay in town all the summer.

60 He feels nervous about losing his job.

61 Congratulations on your coming-of-age. / winning the race.

2. THE QUOTED ENGLISH SAYINGS, FAMILIAR QUOTATIONS AND PROVERBS AND THEIR RUSSIAN EQUIVALENTS

1. The appetite grows by eating. (p. 167)
   Аппетит приходит во время еды.
2. A clean hand wants no washing. (p. 23)
   Честность – лучшая политика./
   Нечестно живешь – себя подведешь.
3. Between two evils 'tis not worth choosing. (p. 93)
   Хрен редьки не слаще./
   Из двух зол лучшее не выберешь.
4. By doing nothing we learn to do ill. (p. 17)
   Праздность ведет к пороку./
   Праздность – мать всех пороков.
5. Champions keep playing until they get it right. (p. 86)
   Чемпионы играют до победного конца.
6. Doing is better than saying. (pp. 17, 257)
   Лучше делать, чем говорить.
7. Eating and scratching wants but a beginning. (p. 58)
   Аппетит приходит во время еды./
   Чем больше что-то делаешь, тем больше увлекаешься.
8. Eighty percent of success is showing up in the right place at the right moment. (p. 79)
   Успех во многом зависит от того, чтобы оказаться в нужном месте в нужный момент.
9. Even reckoning makes lasting (long) friends. (p. 254)
   Честный расчет укрепляет дружбу./
   Счет дружбе не помеха.
10. Fools grow without watering. (p. 168)
    Глупцы плодятся сами./
    Дураков не сеют, не жнут.
11. Gossiping and lying go hand in hand. (p. 57)
    Сплетни и ложь всегда рядом.

12. It is good fishing in troubled waters. (p. 61)
    Легко ловить рыбу в мутной воде.
13. It's a long way that has no turning. (p. 93)
    Нет худа без добра.
14. It's (There's) no use crying over spilt milk. (pp. 29, 71)
    Слезами горю не поможешь.
15. It's no use pumping a dry well. (p. 61)
    Ни к чему заниматься бесполезной работой./
    Переливать из пустого в порожнее.
16. Learning is ever young, even in old age. (p. 1)
    Учиться никогда не поздно./
    Век живи, век учись.
17. One can't make an omelette without breaking eggs. (p. 298)
    Нельзя влезть на елку и не оцарапаться./
    Нельзя добиться чего-либо, не затрачивая сил и средств.
18. A rotten case abides no handling. (p. 93)
    За скверное дело нечего и браться.
19. Seeing is believing. (p. 271)
    Не верь чужим речам, а верь своим глазам.
20. Talking mends no holes. (pp. 58, 257)
    Разговорами делу не поможешь.
21. The proof of the pudding is in the eating. (p. 254)
    Не попробуешь, не поймешь./
    Все проверяется практикой.
22. There are more ways of killing a dog than by hanging. (p. 148)
    Не мытьем, так катаньем./
    Когда скоком, а когда и боком.
23. There are no shortcuts to any place worth going. (p. 23)
    Трудись, а не ищи легких дорог.
24. There is no accounting for tastes. (p. 61)
    О вкусах не спорят./
    На вкус и цвет товарища нет.
25. You/One can't cook a hare before catching him. (p. 179)
    Нельзя делить шкуру неубитого медведя.

Table I

The Gerund as Adverbial Modifier with Different Prepositions

Syntactical Function		Prepositions		Example	Translation
An Adverbial Modifier	1. of **Manner**	**by** **in** **without**	 *не*	***By** addressing Jane* he awfully embarrassed her. We spent the morning ***in** lying on the beach*. He passed by ***without** limping this time*.	Он очень смутил Джейн тем, что обратился к ней. Мы провели утро, лежа на пляже. На сей раз он прошел мимо, не хромая.
	2. of **Time**	**on** **after** **before** **in** **at**	*как только* *после того как* *до того как* *во время* *когда*	***On** entering the room* he at once distinguished some changes. ***In** reading the poem* she learned it by heart.	Войдя в комнату (Как только он вошел), он сразу заметил перемены. Она выучила стихотворение, когда (в то время, как) читала его.
см. стр. 321	3. of **Reason**	**for** **through** **because of** **from** **for fear of** **on account of** **owing to**	*из-за,* *потому что* *из страха (боязни)* *благодаря*	He couldn't answer ***for** coughing*. She didn't speak to him ***for fear of** being recognized*.	Он не мог ответить из-за кашля. (...потому что кашлял.) Она не заговорила с ним, боясь, что ее узнают (...из страха быть узнанной).
	4. of **Attendant Circumstances**	**without** **besides** **instead of**	*и не* *кроме, помимо* *вместо того, чтобы*	***Instead of** working* he read a detective novel.	Вместо того, чтобы работать, он читал детективный роман.
	5. of **Concession**	**despite** **in spite of**	*несмотря на,* *хотя*	**Despite** being very busy he went to meet her at the station.	Хотя он и был очень занят, он пошел на вокзал встретить ее.
	6. of **Condition**	**without** **but for** **in case of** **in the event of**	*без, если не* *если бы не* *в случае, если*	I won't be able to pass the exam ***without** reading this book*. ***But for** your having done half of the work*, I wouldn't have finished it in time.	Я не смогу сдать экзамен, если не прочитаю эту книгу. Если бы ты не сделал половину работы, я бы не закончил ее вовремя.
	7. of **Purpose**	**for** **for the purpose of** **for the object of** **with a view to**	*для того, чтобы, ради* *с целью, для того чтобы*	I'm writing all this ***for** your understanding things better*. ***With a view to** improving his ability to speak French* he spends his holidays in France.	Я пишу все это, чтобы Вы лучше понимали ситуацию. Для того, чтобы (с целью) совершенствовать свои знания французского, он проводит отпуск во Франции.

Table II

The Gerund as Adverbial Modifier of Different Types with the Same Preposition

Preposition	Adverbial modifier of	Example	Translation
for	1. **reason**	She couldn't speak **for *crying***.	Она не могла говорить из-за слез.
	2. **purpose**	The doctors came to the place of accident **for *rescuing people***.	Врачи приехали на место происшествия, чтобы спасти людей.
in	1. **time**	**In *crossing* the street** first look to the left and then to the right.	Переходя улицу, сперва посмотри налево, а затем направо.
	2. **manner**	**In *making* herself busy** she stopped worrying.	Заняв себя делом, она перестала волноваться.
without	1. **manner**	She learned the words **without *writing* them down**.	Она учила слова, не записывая их.
	2. **attendant circumstances**	He went away **without *saying* good-bye**.	Он ушел не попрощавшись.
	3. **condition**	I won't be able to learn the words **without *writing* them down**.	Я не смогу выучить слова, если не буду их записывать.

Table III

Different Syntactical Functions of the Gerund Used with the Same Preposition

Preposition	Syntactical Function	Example	Translation
at	1. ***prepositional object***	He was surprised ***at*** *not being recognized at once.*	Он удивился, что его сразу не узнали.
	2. ***attribute***	Her surprise ***at*** *not being recognized* was unexpected.	Ее удивление от того, что ее не узнали, было неожиданным.
	3. ***adverbial modifier of time***	***At*** *seeing my friend in that place* I stopped.	Увидев своего друга в этом месте, я остановился.
for	1. ***prepositional object***	We thanked him ***for*** *being so helpful.*	Мы поблагодарили его за то, что он так нам помог.
	2. ***attribute***	I feel the need ***for*** *leaving you here.*	Я чувствую необходимость оставить вас здесь.
	3. ***adverbial modifier of reason***	He couldn't speak ***for*** *being out of breath.*	Он не мог говорить из-за того, что задыхался.
	4. ***adverbial modifier of purpose***	We arrived very early ***for*** *having enough time to do the sights of the city.*	Мы приехали очень рано, чтобы успеть осмотреть город.

см. стр. 324

from	1. ***prepositional object***	He tried to prevent himself ***from*** *laughing.*	Он старался удержаться от смеха.
	2. ***adverbial modifier of reason***	Their duel happened ***from*** *misunderstanding each other's motives.*	Их дуэль произошла потому, что они не понимали побуждений друг друга.
in	1. ***prepositional object***	He succeeded ***in*** *proving his point of view.*	Ему удалось доказать свою точку зрения.
	2. ***attribute***	What's the sense ***in*** *your coming here?*	Какой смысл в том, что Вы пришли сюда?
	3. ***adverbial modifier of time***	***In*** *crossing the street* look first to the left and then to the right.	Когда переходишь улицу, посмотри сперва налево, а потом направо.
	4. ***adverbial modifier of manner***	She stopped worrying ***in*** *making herself busy.*	Она перестала волноваться, занявшись делом.
of	1. ***prepositional object***	We suspected the man ***of*** *having stolen our car.*	Мы подозревали этого человека в том, что он украл нашу машину.
	2. ***attribute***	The idea ***of*** *leaving the country* never occurred to me.	Мысль уехать из страны никогда не приходила мне в голову.

см. стр. 325

Preposition	Syntactical Function	Example	Translation
on	1. ***prepositional object***	We count ***on*** *the weather being fine.*	Мы рассчитываем, что погода будет хорошей.
	2. ***attribute***	Their insistence ***on*** *being admitted* was beyond my understanding.	То, что они настаивали (на том), чтобы их впустили, было мне совершенно непонятно.
	3. ***adverbial modifier of time***	***On*** *arriving in London* we went to the hotel at once.	Приехав в Лондон, мы сразу же отправились в гостиницу.
to	1. ***prepositional object***	We are used ***to*** *being treated with respect:*	Мы привыкли, что к нам относятся с уважением.
	2. ***attribute***	I have no objection ***to*** *your joining us for the trip.*	Я не возражаю против того, чтобы вы ехали с нами.
without	1. ***adverbial modifier of manner***	She spoke English ***without*** *making mistakes.*	Она говорила по-английски без ошибок.
	2. ***adverbial modifier of attendant circumstances***	He went out ***without*** *looking back.*	Он вышел и не оглянулся. (..., не оглянувшись)
	3. ***adverbial modifier of condition***	He wouldn't have visited us ***without*** *being invited.*	Он бы не навестил нас, если бы его не пригласили.

Table IV

The Syntactical Functions of the Gerung

№	The Function of the Gerund	Example	Translation
1.	the Subject	a) **Reading books** is my favourite occupation. b) It's no use **reading comics**.	**Чтение книг** – мое любимое занятие. Бесполезно **читать комиксы**.
2.	part of the predicate a) part of a compound nominal predicate (a predicative)	My hobby is **reading books**.	Мое хобби – **чтение книг**.
	b) part of a compound verbal phasal predicate	In spite of the noise I kept on **reading**.	Несмотря на шум, я продолжал **читать**.
3.	an object a) a direct object	I have always enjoyed **reading**.	Я всегда любил **чтение**.
см. стр. 327	b) an indirect object	The child listened attentively to his **father's reading**.	Ребенок внимательно слушал, **как читал отец**.

№	The Function of the Gerund	Example	Translation
4.	an attribute	a) He has a habit **of reading late into the night**. b) Jack Brown is in the **reading** hall now.	a) У него привычка **читать до поздней ночи**. b) Джек Браун сейчас в **читальном** зале.
5.	an adverbial modifier[1] (an adverbial) of 1) manner	He tried to memorize the rule **by reading it several times**.	Он постарался выучить правило, **перечитывая его несколько раз**.
	2) reason	He didn't open the letter **for fear of reading something unpleasant**.	Он не распечатывал письмо **из страха прочесть что-нибудь неприятное**.
	3) purpose	I used to go to the Hermitage **for reading old manuscripts**.	Я ходил в Эрмитаж с тем, **чтобы читать там древние рукописи**.
	4) time	**After reading the manuscript**, he finished writing his play.	**После прочтения рукописи**, он закончил писать пьесу.
	5) condition	**But for reading the manuscript**, he wouldn't have finished the play.	**Если бы он не прочитал рукопись**, он не написал бы пьесу.
	6) concession	I couldn't answer the question **in spite of having read about it**.	Я не смог ответить на этот вопрос, **хотя и прочел об этом много**.
	7) attendant circumstances	We sat at the table **without reading anything**.	Мы сидели за столом и **ничего не читали**.

[1]always preceded by a preposition.

«Изучаем иностранные языки»

Гузеева Ксения Александровна,
Костыгина Светлана Ипполитовна

ГРАММАТИКА
АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА

ГЕРУНДИЙ

Корректор *Е. М. Шпилюк*
Оригинал подготовила *Е. Е. Егорова*

ЛП 000373 от 30 декабря 1999 г.

Подписано в печать 30.01.2004 г. Формат 60x90 1/16.
Гарнитура Антиква. Печать офсетная. Бумага типографская.
Печ. л. 21. Тираж 3 000 экз. Заказ 49

Издательство «Союз»
191180, Санкт-Петербург, наб. р. Фонтанки, д. 90, корп. 4
E-mail: soyuz_or@ppp.delfa.net

Отпечатано с готовых диапозитивов
в ООО «БОРВИК ПОЛИГРАФИЯ»
191119, Санкт-Петербург, Звенигородская ул., 9

ИЗДАТЕЛЬСТВО «СОЮЗ» ИЗДАТЕЛЬСТВО «СОЮЗ» ИЗДАТЕЛЬСТВО «СОЮЗ» ИЗДАТЕЛЬСТВО «СОЮЗ»

ИЗДАТЕЛЬСТВО «СОЮЗ»

ПРЕДЛАГАЕТ ЛИТЕРАТУРУ РАЗЛИЧНОЙ ТЕМАТИКИ:

- учебную;
- развивающую;
- методическую;
- книги по психологии;
- словари;
- справочники и т. п.

Мы заинтересованы в расширении наших контактов и приглашаем к сотрудничеству авторов, издательства и книготорговые организации.

НАШ АДРЕС:

191180, Санкт-Петербург, наб. р. Фонтанки, д. 90, корп. 4

E-mail: soyuz_or@ppp.delfa.net

ТЕЛ.: 310-59-88
ТЕЛ./ФАКС: 315-13-86

ИЗДАТЕЛЬСТВО «СОЮЗ» ИЗДАТЕЛЬСТВО «СОЮЗ» ИЗДАТЕЛЬСТВО «СОЮЗ» ИЗДАТЕЛЬСТВО «СОЮЗ»

КНИГА ПОЧТОЙ КНИГА ПОЧТОЙ КНИГА ПОЧТОЙ КНИГА ПОЧТОЙ КНИГА ПОЧТОЙ

Уважаемые читатели!

Книги Издательства «Союз»
вы можете приобрести почтой,
наложенным платежом.

ЗАЯВКИ НАПРАВЛЯТЬ ПО АДРЕСУ:

190000, Санкт-Петербург, а/я 333,
«Невский Почтовый Дом».

*В заявке укажите
ваш почтовый индекс,
подробный адрес,
фамилию и имя.*

Оплата производится на почте
при получении книг.

Каталог книг Издательства «Союз»,
цены и условия заказа
почтой высылаются бесплатно.

ТЕЛЕФОН ДЛЯ СПРАВОК:
(812) 327-76-66

КНИГА ПОЧТОЙ КНИГА ПОЧТОЙ КНИГА ПОЧТОЙ КНИГА ПОЧТОЙ КНИГА ПОЧТОЙ

«ОБУЧЕНИЕ ЗА РУБЕЖОМ» «ОБУЧЕНИЕ ЗА РУБЕЖОМ» «ОБУЧЕНИЕ ЗА РУБЕЖОМ»

ежемесячный журнал
ОБУЧЕНИЕ ЗА РУБЕЖОМ

Журнал «ОБУЧЕНИЕ ЗА РУБЕЖОМ» — все о том, чему и как учат за рубежом!

Первое профессиональное русскоязычное издание, полностью посвященное всем аспектам обучения и образования за рубежом.

— как, оставаясь дома, получить международное образование

— в каких зарубежных университетах и бизнес-школах стоит учиться и почему

— после какой школы Ваш ребенок легко поступит в лучшие колледжи мира

— гранты, стипендии и стажировки, которые Вас ждут

— где учат гольфу, дайвингу, горным лыжам...

наш ПОДПИСНОЙ индекс 26254

«ОБУЧЕНИЕ ЗА РУБЕЖОМ» — сейчас самое время!

тел.: (095) 748 20 20
E-mail: mnemo@dol.ru

«ОБУЧЕНИЕ ЗА РУБЕЖОМ» «ОБУЧЕНИЕ ЗА РУБЕЖОМ» «ОБУЧЕНИЕ ЗА РУБЕЖОМ»

ИЗДАТЕЛЬСТВО «СОЮЗ»

Выпустило в свет:

О. А. Бибин

ВВЕДЕНИЕ В ПРАКТИЧЕСКУЮ ФОНЕТИКУ НЕМЕЦКОГО ЯЗЫКА

СБОРНИК РАССКАЗОВ И УПРАЖНЕНИЙ ДЛЯ ДОМАШНЕГО ЧТЕНИЯ

УЧЕБНОЕ ПОСОБИЕ

Данная книга знакомит с основными закономерностями немецкого литературного произношения, рассматривая явления немецкой фонетики в сравнении с русской. Теоретические положения раскрываются в многочисленных упражнениях, охватывающих как систему звуков немецкого языка, так и его интонационную структуру. Значительное внимание уделено вопросам немецкой графики и современной орфографии. Книга предназначена для студентов I — II курсов факультета иностранных языков.

ПО ВОПРОСУ ПРИОБРЕТЕНИЯ КНИГ

ОБРАЩАТЬСЯ ПО ТЕЛЕФОНУ:

ТЕЛ./ФАКС: **(812) 315-13-86** ТЕЛ.: **(812) 310-59-88**

E-mail: soyuz_or@ppp.delfa.net

ИЗДАТЕЛЬСТВО «СОЮЗ»

Выпустило в свет:

И. И. Бурова, С. В. Силинский

ПРАКТИКУМ ПО АНГЛИЙСКОМУ ЯЗЫКУ

60 РАЗГОВОРНЫХ ТЕМ ДЛЯ ИЗУЧАЮЩИХ АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

УЧЕБНОЕ ПОСОБИЕ

Настоящее пособие предназначено для учащихся старших классов школ с преподаванием английского языка; абитуриентов, готовящихся к вступительному экзамену по английскому языку; слушателей подготовительных отделений при гуманитарных факультетах вузов, а также слушателей языковых курсов высших уровней сложности. Представленные в книге материалы, охватывающие широкий спектр тем, могут быть использованы на занятиях на младших курсах как неязыковых, так и языковых вузов.

Пособие состоит из 60 опорных текстов по наиболее распространенным разговорным темам и предложений для тренировки навыков перевода с русского языка на английский.

ПО ВОПРОСУ ПРИОБРЕТЕНИЯ КНИГ

ОБРАЩАТЬСЯ ПО ТЕЛЕФОНУ:

ТЕЛ./ФАКС: **(812) 315-13-86** ТЕЛ.: **(812) 310-59-88**

E-mail: soyuz_or@ppp.delfa.net

ИЗДАТЕЛЬСТВО «СОЮЗ»

Выпустило в свет:

В. В. Кабакчи

ПРАКТИКА АНГЛОЯЗЫЧНОЙ МЕЖКУЛЬТУРНОЙ КОММУНИКАЦИИ

IN ENGLIH ABOUT RUSSIA AND THE WHOLE WORLD

УЧЕБНОЕ ПОСОБИЕ

Пособие ставит своей целью заполнить пробел в традиционном обучении английскому языку. Пособие рассчитано на широкий круг читателей. Кроме того, данная книга будет полезна специалистам, для которых необходимо свободное владение английским языком межкультурного общения.

ПО ВОПРОСУ ПРИОБРЕТЕНИЯ КНИГ

ОБРАЩАТЬСЯ ПО ТЕЛЕФОНУ:

ТЕЛ./ФАКС: **(812) 315-13-86** ТЕЛ.: **(812) 310-59-88**

E-mail: soyuz_or@ppp.delfa.net

ИЗДАТЕЛЬСТВО «СОЮЗ»

Выпустило в свет:

Е. П. Чарекова, Н. В. Баграмова

ПРАКТИКА АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА

СБОРНИК РАССКАЗОВ И УПРАЖНЕНИЙ ДЛЯ ДОМАШНЕГО ЧТЕНИЯ

УЧЕБНОЕ ПОСОБИЕ

Настоящее пособие ставит своей целью ознакомить студентов с некоторыми рассказами английских и американских писателей и дать материал для чтения и обсуждения на занятиях по домашнему чтению. Пособие рассчитано на студентов и всех лиц, находящихся на продвинутом этапе изучения английского языка.

ПО ВОПРОСУ ПРИОБРЕТЕНИЯ КНИГ

ОБРАЩАТЬСЯ ПО ТЕЛЕФОНУ:

ТЕЛ. / ФАКС: **(812) 315-13-86** ТЕЛ.: **(812) 310-59-88**

E-mail: soyuz_or@ppp.delfa.net

ДЛЯ ЗАМЕТОК

ISBN5-94-033-170-X

Библиосфера
Старооскольский ТД Фикист
мкр. Конева, д. 5А
Тел. 32-43-70
8434
Гузеева К.А. Грамматика англ. яз.
Цена 115.00
Мастер-Книга 68527 06.10.04